

THE YEAR'S WORK
IN LIBRARIANSHIP

VOLUME IX

1936

THE YEAR'S WORK IN LIBRARIANSHIP

VOLUME IX

1936

EDITED FOR

THE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION

BY

ARUNDELL ESDAILE, M.A., F.L.A.

Secretary of the British Museum

AND

J. H. P. PAFFORD, M.A., F.L.A.

Sub-Librarian, National Central Library

THE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION
CHAUCER HOUSE, MALET PLACE
LONDON

1937

Made and Printed in Great Britain
by *Simson Shand Ltd., London*
and Hertford

PREFACE

THE Editors feel that the present volume offers something like a permanent form for the *Year's Work*. Some chapters may, from time to time, be excluded on the ground of lack of material, and new chapters may possibly be added; but, on the whole, future volumes are likely to be similar to the present one in matter and arrangement, although it is hoped to make them slightly larger, and, of course, steadily better.

Chapters on all the subjects dealt with in Volume 8 are included, and those on School Libraries, Children's Libraries, Library Law and Historical Bookbinding are restored. A general introduction and a concluding chapter on matters not treated elsewhere in the book are new features.* The only other alteration is the amalgamation of the two sections of the chapter on Special Libraries.

As Volume 8 did not appear until the end of November, 1936, the present volume has been produced within seven months of its predecessor; an achievement due to the admirable co-operation of the contributors, who all completed their chapters within the very short time given them. The Editors are grateful to them, and also to the printers for their accuracy and speed in producing the work.

The only contributor to Volume 8 who was unable to continue this year was Mr. John Warner, who has, for several years, written the section on bookbinding materials, and whose services are much appreciated. A cordial welcome is extended to the new contributors—Miss Colwell, Miss Tomblin, Mr. Horrocks and Mr. Nixon; and thanks are offered to Mr. Barnard, who has not only continued his most useful translations from the Dutch but has brought other items, which might otherwise have been overlooked, to the notice of the Editors. They are also grateful to Dr. S. Jakobson, Librarian of the School of Slavonic Studies, for translating articles in Slavonic, and to Mr. E. Alan Baker, who has again compiled the index.

A. E.

J. H. P. P.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER	PAGE
I GENERAL INTRODUCTION, <i>by</i> ARUNDELL ESDAILE	1
II NATIONAL AND UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> LIONEL J. H. BRADLEY, M.A., A.L.A.	8
III SPECIAL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> CYRIL C. BARNARD, B.A., F.L.A. and A. D. ROBERTS, F.L.A.	24
IV URBAN LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> F. SEYMOUR SMITH, F.L.A.	41
V COUNTY AND RURAL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> ELSIE COCKERLYNE, M.A., F.L.A.	53
VI SCHOOL LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> MONICA CANT, F.L.A.	66
VII CHILDREN'S LIBRARIES, <i>by</i> EILEEN H. COLWELL, F.L.A.	72
VIII LIBRARY CO-OPERATION, <i>by</i> JANET TOMBLIN, F.L.A.	77
IX PROFESSIONAL EDUCATION, <i>by</i> HANNAH SMITH, M.A., F.L.A.	90
X LIBRARY BUILDINGS, <i>by</i> EDWARD J. CARTER, B.A., A.R.I.B.A.	100
XI LIBRARY PRACTICE :	
(i) ORGANIZATION AND ROUTINE, <i>by</i> W. A. MUNFORD, B.Sc., F.L.A.	116
(ii) CATALOGUING, <i>by</i> MARGARET S. TAYLOR, M.A., F.L.A.	125
(iii) CLASSIFICATION, <i>by</i> W. C. BERWICK SAYERS, F.L.A.	131
XII LIBRARY LAW, <i>by</i> A. R. HEWITT	135
XIII BOOK PRODUCTION :	
(i) PRINTING AND ILLUSTRATION, <i>by</i> H. WOODBINE, A.L.A.	144
(ii) BOOKBINDING : METHODS AND MATERIALS, <i>by</i> S. HORROCKS, A.L.A.	153

CHAPTER	PAGE
(iii) BOOKBINDING : HISTORICAL, <i>by</i> H. M. NIXON, B.A.	159
XIV HISTORICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY, <i>by</i> F. C. FRANCIS, M.A.	166
XV BIBLIOGRAPHY : GENERAL AND NATIONAL, <i>by</i> BIBLIOTHEKSRAAT DR. JORIS VORSTIUS, <i>translated by</i> A. C. TOWNSEND, M.A.	192
XVI PALÆOGRAPHY AND MANUSCRIPTS, <i>by</i> C. E. WRIGHT, M.A., PH.D.	204
XVII ARCHIVES, <i>by</i> IRENE J. CHURCHILL, D.PHIL., C. S. DREW, B.A., B.LITT., NORAH DERMOTT HARDING, B.A., <i>and</i> HILARY JENKINSON, M.A., F.S.A.	216
XVIII OTHER MATTERS, <i>by</i> J. H. P. PAFFORD	254
INDEX	258

ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
Oxford, Bodleian Library, View . . .	104
„ „ „ Plans . . .	105
Liverpool University Library, Plan . . .	108
Wallington (Surrey), Public Library . . .	112

COMMON ABBREVIATIONS

<i>A. f. Bb.</i>	<i>Archiv für Buchbinderei.</i>
<i>A. et B.</i>	<i>Archives et Bibliothèques.</i>
<i>A.L.A.</i>	American Library Association.
<i>ASLIB</i>	Association of Special Libraries and Information Bureaux.
<i>BiGi</i>	<i>Bibliotheksgids.</i>
<i>BiLev</i>	<i>Bibliothekseleven.</i>
<i>B.M.</i>	British Museum.
<i>B.N.</i>	Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.
<i>Bull. Med. L.A.</i>	<i>Bulletin of the Medical Library Association.</i>
<i>Die B.</i>	<i>Die Bücherei.</i>
<i>G. J.</i>	<i>Gutenberg Jahrbuch.</i>
<i>H.B.</i>	<i>Het Boek.</i>
<i>I.F.L.A.</i>	International Federation of Library Associations.
<i>L.</i>	<i>The Library.</i>
<i>L.A.</i>	Library Association (British).
<i>L.A.R.</i>	<i>Library Association Record.</i>
<i>L.At.</i>	<i>Library Assistant.</i>
<i>L. J.</i>	<i>Library Journal.</i>
<i>L. of C.</i>	Library of Congress.
<i>L.Q.</i>	<i>Library Quarterly.</i>
<i>L.R.</i>	<i>Library Review.</i>
<i>L.W.</i>	<i>Library World.</i>
<i>N.C.L.</i>	National Central Library.
<i>Nord. Tid.</i>	<i>Nordisk tidskrift för bok- och biblioteksväsen.</i>
<i>Phn.</i>	<i>Philobiblon.</i>
<i>R. du L. et d. B.</i>	<i>Revue du Livre et des Bibliothèques.</i>
<i>S.L.</i>	<i>Special Libraries.</i>
<i>V.D.B.</i>	Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare.
<i>W.B.</i>	<i>Wilson Bulletin.</i>
<i>Y.W.</i>	<i>Year's Work in Librarianship.</i>
<i>Z. f. B.</i>	<i>Zentralblatt für Bibliothekswesen.</i>

THE YEAR'S WORK IN LIBRARIANSHIP

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

By ARUNDELL ESDAILE, M.A., F.L.A.

IN this short chapter, which is new to the series, an attempt will be made to direct attention to the most important matters which are dealt with in the chapters following it, and to indicate main lines of progress.

The year 1936 was in general one of continued recovery from the lean period which was at its leanest four or five years before. Building is always an index to prosperity; and it may be noticed that new or enlarged libraries of all types, national and university, special and municipal, are recorded in considerable number as built or (more often) as planned. The National Library of Scotland's plans are passed and published, and so are those of the Bodleian extension, while the Bavarian State Library, the National Archives Library of U.S.A., the University Libraries of Leeds, Liverpool, Durham, Rome, Genoa, Ljubljana, Oslo, Pennsylvania and Minnesota, the Frick Art Library, the Royal Empire Society, and the Town libraries of the Hague and Frederiksberg, contribute news—a goodly list. Against this must be set the destruction, by fire of the building (luckily not the books) of the University Library of Kyoto.

The experience gained by recent building has not yet produced the reformation in English library architecture which is to be looked for, and which, with sad exceptions, has for some time been observable in America, and on the Continent of Europe: Mr. Carter goes so far as to speak of “the deplorable state of English library building.”

The most distinguished work has been done in libraries of the national class, and at the other end of the scale in some of the many branches of public libraries which have been erected.

The new Bodleian extension comes in for serious criticisms which the same architect's recent Cambridge University Library largely escaped ; but the criticisms are more concerned with the æsthetic than with the practical aspects of the plan. The University Library of Leeds and the National Archives Library of U.S.A. at Washington both contribute some advances in practical planning, and both are dignified buildings. Of small public libraries, there is praise for a number ; we might mention specially, in England, Wallington (Surrey) and Scarborough ; in America, Cornwall, N.Y., and in Finland an example of the " functional " planning, of which the Swiss National Library at Berne was so notable a model, that at Viipuri.

Generally speaking, funds have been ampler ; in German Universities the figures have been very striking. Most librarians would be glad to have their budgets advanced in two years from R.M. 60,000 to 90,000 or from 56,000 to 97,000, as happened in 1934-1936 at Göttingen and Berlin. The English National Central Library, however, is struggling to find the extra income of £2,000 per annum which is necessary to earn the increased Treasury grant ; the Regional Bureaux, which are really all part of the same system, have little to spare to contribute. A study by an American scholar, Mr. Douglas Waples, of the purchases in the peculiarly controversial field of social sciences made by some important European libraries, seems to show that the influence of the totalitarian State on reading, while no doubt autocratic in the popular libraries, does not much, if at all, affect the scholar and specialist, or the world of higher education. Public attention was attracted to the record of one famous library at least, by the celebration of the centenary of the U.S. Army Medical (formerly the Surgeon-General's) Library at Washington.

A new law of deposit in Czecho-Slovakia should be noticed.

In the Public Libraries interest has centred round the sociological studies which are being made, largely in America, of the "reading habits" of the communities to be served; a precedent which should be followed elsewhere is a study complementary to these, made at Chicago, of the extent to which the books in public possession in that city satisfy the requirements indicated by certain standard lists. It is probable that the results of such an enquiry would often be surprising, though not always in the same way. An experiment by which the whole resources of the libraries of a city are made available is that at Sheffield, now in its second year, and reported as very successful; Mr. Lamb is to be congratulated on what will, one supposes, prove a landmark.

It is good to see oneself with the eyes of others; the travels of English librarians for the survey financed by the generosity of the Rockefeller Foundation, are bearing fruit. Mr. Cowley's report on the larger libraries of the Continent and Mr. H. A. Sharp's on American libraries are available. New public library bills for England and Scotland are in preparation. In the field of rural libraries there is not much to record in Great Britain, though certain useful standards of stock, staff, etc., have been laid down; but they are clearly going to be the next move forward in the United States, and a valuable survey of development in the Southern States by Miss T. D. Barker is noticed. In Germany, in the Kreis Kottbus, an experimental system of village libraries has been set up and will be watched with interest; but it is on a very small scale. The account of the new village libraries of Spain makes reading full of tragic irony. School libraries have long been, technically speaking, highly developed in the United States. Schools in that country are often very large, and thus are able to employ whole-time librarians. American School Librarians have therefore been usually librarians and have had their own section of the A.L.A. In Great Britain, schools are smaller and their libraries generally run in spare time by hardworked teachers. The Carnegie United Kingdom

Trust set up a Committee, which had the co-operation of the Board of Education and issued a valuable report. As a result a School Libraries Section has been formed in the Library Association, and a *School Library Review* established.

A heavy fall in the use of children's libraries in some places, contrasted with much more active work in them elsewhere, seems to require better explanation. The Library Association has founded in memory of Andrew Carnegie a medal for the best children's book of the year.

In Professional Education there is to be welcomed a tendency, exemplified notably in the Columbia School of Library Service, New York, to reduce the study of purely technical processes, which impede the higher studies of candidates for the profession. These routine matters are only necessary to the beginner when he is going into a small or badly organised library where he will not be taught them in his daily work. In this connection, Dr. Leipprand's excellent remarks on the need of scholarship in library staffs should be read, and also Dr. James T. Gerould's suggestion that surveys of special collections should be made, not by librarians but by specialists.

In Great Britain the question, admittedly rather academic, whether or not some form of State control would not stimulate backward local libraries, as it certainly has backward schools, has been discussed, at first with more heat than light, but later with more light than heat. The Library Association gave the question long consideration, and has concluded that the ideal precedent is that of the University Grants Committee, which inspects, reports to Parliament, and recommends grants, but does not actually control. The system of modified State control of local libraries in force in Denmark may be usefully compared.

Co-operation continues to expand. The most striking application of the principle during the year was the appearance of volume I (B—Bailey) of what is now to be called *der Deutscher Gesamtkatalog*, the first to record the holdings of all German libraries of general scope and over 100,000

volumes, and all considerable special libraries; 94 in Germany and eight in Austria are included. American librarians have been in conference on the machinery of Union catalogues, and the subject has so far developed as to have achieved its first separate bibliography. The general experience is that the percentage of books to be found in only one of a number of libraries contributing to a Union catalogue is far higher than would have been expected. Corollaries are the model *Règlement du prêt* international, drawn up by the International Library Committee, and the advance in the revision of the Anglo-American Catalogue Code.

The technical problem of the preservation of leather book-bindings has, one hopes, been advanced towards solution by the second interim report of the Committee of the Printing Industry's and British Leather Manufacturers' Research Associations and others, which indicates methods of securing the presence of the salts necessary to prevent the infiltration of sulphuric acid, and so guaranteeing durability.

Notable contributions to the history of the art of book-binding have been made in the three years covered by the revived chapter on the subject.

The new "Library Literature" noted in our final chapter, promises us an annual cumulation of the lists of professional literature which appear each month in the *Library Journal*. We shall thus have a volume produced in America which will be on somewhat similar lines to the excellent *Internationale Bibliographie des Buch und Bibliothekswesens* which comes from Germany under the editorship of J. Vorstius and G. Reincke. This is good news, for the American volume is bound to have characteristics of its own which will make research in our profession easier. The opportunity is a good one to note that the *Year's Work* has a unique position and is complementary to each of these bibliographies; for whereas the *Internationale Bibliographie* is a more or less complete list of unannotated titles, and the promised American list will probably be selective and partially annotated, the *Year's Work* is neither of these,

but is a running account of the main work which has been done during the year. It is therefore valuable not primarily for the titles it brings together, but for the account of these both severally and as a whole, and especially for the latter. It is also to be noted that whereas the emphasis in the *Year's Work* is always on professional literature, yet the contributors also, from time to time, include accounts of work done even though nothing may have been written about it. No other work presents in this way a running critical account of the main achievements of the year.

The *Year's Work* is also much more flexible than a more formal bibliography, from the very nature of its compilation, can possibly be. The number and variety of contributors to the *Year's Work* ensures that comments, frequently on the same work, will illustrate many points of view; and the contributors will also obtain their material not only from professional literature but from many sources quite outside that and even from unpublished work, whereas the bibliographies must naturally be more or less confined to professional literature.

Bibliography continues to produce a very large body of writing. The essay by Georg Schneider, originally appended to his *Handbuch*, but dropped from the 4th edition, has now appeared separately, while English and German editions of the *Decimal Classification* are in progress. The *Lexikon des gesamten Buchwesens* by Karl Löffler and Joachim Kirchner has been completed and provides a body of knowledge not before easily accessible. While important work continues to be done upon the fifteenth century, later periods are more and more attracting the attention of the modern school which was trained upon it. The administration and study of Archives shew a wide interest. The German Reich's archiv has been reorganised, and a great increase in its public use is noticed, while France shews a revival of financial provision for the care of archives, and in America, the *Second Annual Report of the Archivist of the United States* records large-scale activities.

In a work which of necessity treats of so many details,

it is a relief to be able to welcome a general study of the place of libraries in civilization, written in a broad and philosophical spirit, such as *Die Kulturfunktion der Bibliothek*, by Dr. Oskar Thyregod ; and also a vigorous sketch of recent movements, with suggestions for fresh advances in librarianship, *The Library of the Future*, by Mr. B. M. Headicar, the recently retired librarian of the London School of Economics, who writes with the enthusiasm of one at the beginning instead of at the end of a professional career.

In all the sections of the *Year's Work* it will be apparent that the " library world " is growing smaller, that there is a new spirit which annihilates space and ignores frontiers. For this we have to thank such impersonal descendants of Mæcenas as the Rockefeller Foundation and the Carnegie Corporation ; but much is also the work of librarians themselves through the International Federation of Library Associations and its Committee. Philosophers, alas, are not likely to be made kings, and still less are librarians ; but in a world given over in large part to ideas of childish crudity it is much to know that at least the librarians of all countries are quietly collaborating and forming " cells " of international concord.

CHAPTER II

NATIONAL AND UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

By L. J. H. BRADLEY, M.A., A.L.A.

GENERAL

IN the records of National and University Libraries for 1936 it is difficult to find any particular trend which is not common to all large, learned libraries. But a novel approach to "National Libraries", where "National" perhaps has a double-edged meaning, was made in a book¹ by Douglas Waples and Harold D. Lasswell. A select list was made of important recent works in social science published in the U.S., England, France and Germany, and an examination was made of the numbers held in some of the chief National, University and Institutional Libraries of the U.S. and the chief European countries, excluding books published in the library's own country. Hence conclusions are drawn as to the degree to which libraries acquire books and periodicals published in other countries. The authors examine the various factors, financial, political and so forth, affecting this selection, and their political and cultural implications. These cannot be summarized here, but it may be mentioned that censorship in the totalitarian states appears to be so far negligible as a factor in excluding foreign publications compared with lack of funds, lack of information and lack of demands from readers. It is a book which should be studied by all concerned with national and university libraries and by all who believe in the unrestricted circulation of the results of scholarship and research.

Georg Leyh's paper to the German Library Conference, "Stellung und Aufgabe der wissenschaftlichen Bibliothek in

¹ Waples (Douglas) and Lasswell (Harold D.): *National Libraries and Foreign Scholarship. Notes on Recent Selections in Social Science.* xiv, 152 pp., Chicago, 1936.

der Zeit"², discusses some problems which are of fundamental significance to National and University Libraries. Though the technical aspects of a librarian's work are of the first importance, that importance is not unlimited. If scholars are to have the service they expect, the library staff must include specialists in the various subjects who are something more than pure administrators and bibliographers. The great growth in the size of catalogues has resulted in their being no longer the shortest route from reader to book. University librarians, in particular, must guard against the undue growth of seminar libraries and take measures against uneconomical overlapping between them, while recognizing that the importance attached to such libraries is evidence that the main University Library is not giving a fully satisfactory service.

UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

This year, unusually, the *L.Q.* provided no article of general interest to university librarians, but there came from America an important and valuable book³ in which the whole administration of a college library is considered, from aims and organization down to physical plant, finances and records. Making allowance for national variations of outlook and practice and for the difference between a "Liberal arts college" and a University this is a book which every university librarian will do well to study.

There are also a number of interesting contributions to the *L.J.* and the *A.L.A. Bull.* touching upon many branches of University and College work. Edwin E. Williams, in "Introducing the University Library"⁴, maintains that University librarians have tended to ignore sound methods of publicizing their institutions. He suggests a plan by which, in maintaining a general file of information on the library, "news stories" may be prepared for use as required

² *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 473-82.

³ Randall (William M.) and Goodrich (F. L. D.): *Principles of College Library Administration*. xii, 246 pp., Chicago, 1936.

⁴ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 677-79.

or for offer to appropriate newspapers and magazines. James Thayer Gerould, in "Alumni and the College Library"⁵, urges on University librarians the advantage of making known the activities and needs of the library by "Associations of Friends" and by other means of publicity. "The College Library Report"⁶ was discussed by J. D. Russell, R. M. Dunbar and S. A. McCarthy, who gave the result of a questionnaire submitted to 500 colleges, with special attention to 25 superior reports. From this it appeared that both in the drawing up and in the dissemination of reports wide divergences were found and that most colleges would gain considerable advantages from revising and improving their practice. Charles H. Brown, in "Statistical Data and their use in the College Library"⁷, enlarges on the help that may be gained from carefully used statistics. A variation from the norm is, at least, an indication of the need for analysing the situation, while comparative statistics are especially valuable in appealing for funds.

J. Periam Danton discussed "The Faculty, the Librarian and Book Selection"⁸ and urged college librarians to take more active measures to assist faculty members in their ordering of books and to ensure a systematic development of the library's collections as a unified, correlated whole. In an address on "Consideration of a College Library Book List", delivered at a meeting of College Librarians, Flora Belle Ludington advocated an annotated monthly list of books suitable for college libraries, to include titles in English and European languages. The discussion showed that such a list, or alternatively a yearly book-list, cumulated from reviews from other sources, would have considerable support⁹. Earle E. Emme studied, from a psychological point of view, the subject of "Library Needs of College Students and Ways of discovering them"¹⁰. He describes the technique of a

⁵ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 13-17.

⁶ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 216-20 and 282.

⁷ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 225-28.

⁸ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 7, 15-17.

⁹ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 156-60.

¹⁰ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 150-55.

study made upon the freshmen of a grade A college, and sets forth some of the "adjustment problems" relating to libraries which were brought to light, with suggestions of methods by which the librarian may find remedies for them.

A symposium was reported¹¹ on "State and Local Documents in a University Library", at a meeting of the Conference of College and University Librarians. The first part, by Josephine B. Holingsworth, on "Selection and Acquisition", is, naturally, of interest primarily for collections of United States documents; the second part, by Geneva McCain, on "Records, Maintenance and Reference Use", contains some useful notes on the methods of handling this rather intractable material.

In a valuable paper, to the College and Reference Section of the *A.L.A.*, on "Describing Library Resources"¹², James T. Gerould pointed out that, except in highly specialized libraries, no library staff can possibly make an adequate evaluation of the collections under their charge. Without a common denominator, lists and descriptions of special collections cannot solve the scholar's problem of where to find the collection most suited to his immediate need. He suggested that the national associations of scholars in various subjects should inaugurate the study by competent specialists of the library resources available to their members, a project which might with advantage be initiated in many countries. Mention may also be made of an address at the *A.L.A.* Conference by Henry O. Severance on "The Value of Research and Authorship for College and University Librarians"¹³, and a comprehensive article by Sydney B. Mitchell on "The Academic and Professional Education of College Librarians"¹⁴, though its chief interest is for prospective librarians in the U.S.

Most students are in need of some guidance in the use of the library, and the plan adopted in certain Universities of

¹¹ *L. J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 445-47 and 478-80.

¹² *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 680-82.

¹³ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 620-22.

¹⁴ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 69-74.

giving new students a course of bibliographic instruction is one which might be extended with advantage. *The University of Minnesota* has issued a useful handbook¹⁵ which describes the collections and their arrangement and gives an elementary but necessary account of the classification, the catalogue and the methods of borrowing, reference, etc. A similar guide has been issued by the Director of the *University Library of Madrid*¹⁶. Two American manuals, of which revised editions appeared, may be adduced for comparison. The first¹⁷ is elementary in nature, the second¹⁸ is specifically addressed to college and university students. It is much to be desired that similar publications should be prepared, adapted to the needs and customs of every country. The United States has even produced a film on the subject—"Found in a Book: the Movie Turns Librarian"—designed to give a picture of the library and of library tools, to introduce the student to certain primary reference works and to furnish some idea of how to use them¹⁹. Finally Guy R. Lyle, in "Greetings to Freshmen!"²⁰, advocated the publication of a leaflet, adaptable to the needs of individual colleges and designed to rouse in freshmen a more lively library interest than can be gained by the more formal reference handbook.

AUSTRIA.—In 1936 the government of Austria concluded another agreement to promote the exchange of publications, this time with France²¹.

BELGIUM.—A special grant to libraries was made by the

¹⁵ *Univ. of Minnesota: Library Handbook*. 60 pp., Minneapolis, 1936.

¹⁶ Lasso de la Vega y Jiménez-Placer (J.): *Como utilizar una biblioteca*. 126 pp., Madrid, 1935.

¹⁷ Scripture (Elizabeth) and Greer (Margaret R.): *Find it yourself! A brief course in the use of books and libraries*. 'Teachers' ed., rev. 64 pp., N.Y., 1936 (English edition, rev. and enl. by A. J. Hawkes. 96 pp. Gravesend, 1936).

¹⁸ Hutchins (M.) and others, Editors: *Guide to the use of libraries. A manual for college and university students*. 5th ed. 264 pp., N.Y. 1936. (Abridged Ed., rev., 86 pp., N.Y., 1936).

¹⁹ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 751 and 899.

²⁰ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 221-22.

²¹ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 582 and *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 119.

government for 1935 and 1936, by an arrangement with the German government, for the purchase of German publications. This has enabled the *Bibliothèque Royale*, for instance, to complete its sets of German periodicals²².

CZECHO-SLOVAKIA.—One of the most important items in the report of J. Emler²³ on the learned libraries of Czecho-Slovakia in 1935-36 concerns the compulsory deposit of books published in the country. *The Public and University Library* of Prague, now fittingly re-named the *National and University Library*, is to receive all publications; the *University Libraries of Brno and Bratislava* those of their respective regions. Certain government libraries also share in the deposit. In the *National Library* the new Manuscript Reading Room was opened in February and the old "Chapelle aux Miroirs" of the Clementinum was converted into an Exhibition Hall. The *Czech Academy of Sciences and Arts* has deposited its library of 28,000 volumes in the *National Library*.

In default of the realisation of its plans the library of the *University of Brno* has relieved its congestion by taking over a neighbouring public building as a book-store. The Library of the *Comenius University of Bratislava*, which has already 300,000 volumes although it is the most recent in the country, is preparing plans for an extension in a wing of the new building of the Faculty of Law.

DENMARK.—The *University of Copenhagen* is putting up a new building to house the medical and science library. It will be ready by the end of 1937²⁴. Accommodation will be provided for 400,000 volumes, twice the present total, and there will be an unusually generous supply of rooms for special purposes, including a typing room, a "talking room" and a smoke room.

ESTHONIA.—Since information about the Baltic States is not widespread, it may be worth while to quote here some facts from a review in *Bibliofilia* (38, 1936, p. 222) of a

²² *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 122.

²³ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, pp. 170-78.

²⁴ Larsen (K.): *Dansk Biblioteksfører*, København, 1936, p. 77 and *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 132.

volume²⁵ published in English in 1935 by the *Central Statistical Office*, Tallin. The *University of Tallin Library* comprises 320,000 books and 200,000 pamphlets. Other noteworthy libraries belong to the *National Museum* and the *Society of Letters*. The *Esthonian Bibliographical Institute*, also at Tallin, possesses a complete collection of all the periodicals of the country and keeps a card index of articles published in them.

FINLAND.—The report of L. O. Th. Tudeer²⁶ shows that there was a further financial improvement in 1935-36, the funds of the *University Library of Helsingfors* being increased from 1,010,000 Finnish marks to 1,130,000 marks. A special grant was also made to the *Finnish University of Turku (Åbo)* to develop and complete its collection of Finnish literature. A grant has also been made to ensure the continuance of the "Catalogue général d'accessions des bibliothèques scientifiques de Finlande." The book-store for the *Swedish University of Turku (Åbo Akademi)* was completed.

FRANCE.—The report of L. Bultingaire²⁷ shows that the reorganization of the *Bibliothèque Nationale* continues and the projects mentioned last year were completed. The *Salle des Catalogues et de la Bibliographie*, whose service is every day increasing, will soon need to be extended. The new *Salle de la Réserve* marks a great improvement on the former provision of special tables in the *Grande Salle*. The *Salle des Périodiques* was described by Mlle C. Adam²⁸.

New book-stores have been made for the *Library of the University of Paris* which has been helped also by the attachment of the *Bibliothèque S^{te} Geneviève*. New buildings or extensions have been made for the *Universities of Bordeaux and Nancy* and for the *Faculty of Medicine at Lyons*²⁷. The *University Library of Lyons* has received from the widow of Salomon Reinach his library of classical and archæological literature amounting to 15,000 volumes²⁹.

²⁵ Pullerits (A.): Estonia. Population, Cultural and Economic Life, Tallin, 1935.

²⁶ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, pp. 145-46.

²⁷ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, pp. 147-49.

²⁸ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, 604-05.

²⁹ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 327.

GERMANY.—The Report³⁰ of the Berlin *Staatsbibliothek* for 1935 showed substantial increases in the grants for books and binding, the two most striking being the *University of Berlin* where these funds were raised in 1935 from 56,000 RM to 82,000 and again in 1936 to 97,000, and the *University of Göttingen* where the increase in 1935 was from 60,000 RM to 79,000 and in 1936 to 90,000. This was a welcome relief since the expenditure on books and binding in the Prussian university libraries had decreased in 1934 by 12½ per cent compared with 1933. In a few instances there were slight decreases in 1936.

The 32nd Annual Conference of the *Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare* was held in Dresden from June 4 to 7. A brief account by Ernst Leiprand appeared in the June number of *Z.f.B.* and a full report in the September-October number³¹. Dr. Leyh's Presidential address has been mentioned already². Three more papers may be mentioned here. Martin Bollert, in "Johann Joachim Winckelmann als Bibliothekar"³², discussed Winckelmann's work as librarian in Nöthnitz, Dresden and Rome and its relation to his own studies; Albert Predeck, in "Noch einmal die Dokumentation"³³, argued that the great libraries already perform the task of collecting material which is the first and most important part of the work of a "centre of documentation"; Hubert Richter, in "Aus der Geschichte der *Sächsischen Landesbibliothek*"³⁴, traced its progress from the 16th to the 19th century. Its recent reconstruction has been described by Hermann Neubert (with Erhart Kästner) in an article³⁵ which has also been published separately, together with an account of the library's history from 1825 to 1907³⁶.

The *Thüringische Landesbibliothek*, of Altenburg, published

³⁰ *Jahresbericht der Preussischen Staatsbibliothek*, 1935, Berlin and Leipzig, 1936, pp. 10-12.

³¹ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 373-376 and 473-596. See also *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 606-09.

³² *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 482-89.

³³ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 502-19.

³⁴ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 519-31.

³⁵ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 239-55.

³⁶ Neubert (Hermann): *Zur Geschichte der Sächsischen Landesbibliothek*. 61 pp., Leipzig, 1936.

a "Festschrift"³⁷, in celebration of the 250th anniversary of its foundation.

In the *Bavarian State Library*, of Munich, alterations are being made which will suffice for the needs of the next three years, after which considerable extensions will be needed. Eight store-rooms are being converted into stacks and, by this conservation of space, three large rooms will be cleared. One will be used for exhibitions, one for a periodical room and one for special purposes. The former exhibition room will be converted into a refreshment room and the old periodicals room will be added to the accessions department. The loan departments are to be transferred to the ground floor, hitherto entirely devoted to the state archives. The exterior steps with their statues and also the entrance hall are to undergo restoration³⁸.

Wilhelm von Humboldt played an important part in the development of German libraries, as Prussian Minister of Education. Friedrich Kreis, in "Wilhelm von Humboldt und die Bibliotheken"³⁹, traces his interest to his student days at Göttingen and describes his activities on behalf of the *Royal Library* in Berlin and the then newly-founded *University*. A biography of Adolf von Harnack by his daughter⁴⁰ appeared during the year, providing, among the record of his other claims to remembrance, a good account of his work as Generaldirektor of the *Preussische Staatsbibliothek* whose new building, the finest in Germany, was erected during his period of office.

The *University of Frankfurt am Main*, founded in 1914, had to postpone, owing to the world war and the economic crisis, its realisation of a library. Meanwhile the *University* made use of the *City Library* (600,000 volumes), the *Senckenberg Library* (250,000 volumes) and the *Rothschild Library* (110,000 volumes) the administration of which has been centralized since 1927. The competition of 1934-35

³⁷ Schmidt (Franz Paul), Editor: *Thüringische Studien*. 190 pp., Altenburg, 1936.

³⁸ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 95 and 574.

³⁹ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 196-209.

⁴⁰ Zahn-Harnack (Agnes von): *Adolf von Harnack*. 577 pp., Berlin-Tempelhof, 1936.

for a *Central University Library*, to house all three collections, failed to produce a wholly satisfactory result. A further, restricted contest resulted in the choice in 1936 of the plans of Heinrich A. Schaefer⁴¹.

Werner Ronneberger, in "Neuerungen in der *Universitätsbibliothek Jena*"⁴², describes the improvements which have been made there in the past 10 years. The *University of Jena* has a library of some 500,000 volumes and with its enlarged working quarters, its new system of records and improved methods of cataloguing, accessioning periodicals and dealing with duplicates must be one of the best equipped of the German University libraries. The *State and University Library of Breslau* has recently acquired, from the library of the late Max Pinkus, special collections devoted to Jakob Böhme and Gerhart Hauptmann. The latter, which numbers about 4,500 volumes, has been described by Felix A. Voigt⁴³. Professor Arno Werner's music collection of the works of Mid-German composers has been presented to the *University Library of Halle*⁴⁴.

The regulation of dissertations continues to excite discussion and Hans Lutz, in "Überlegungen zum Dissertationentausch" objects to the proposal that the book trade should be charged with the exchange of dissertations⁴⁵.

GREAT BRITAIN.—The *British Museum* has followed the example of the *Bodleian* by publishing in its *Quarterly* a first short-title list of bibliographies not in the library. It is strange that this method of filling up gaps by issuing lists of 'Desiderata' has not been more widely followed⁴⁶. The new combined list of Bodleian Desiderata, issued in January, 1936, states that during the past 11 years 776 items have been obtained out of 1864 listed. A specially notable donation was the gift by Lady Firth to the *Bodleian* of a large and extremely valuable part of the library of the late Professor Sir Charles Firth, containing many rare works relating to English

⁴¹ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 710-11.

⁴² *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 442-52.

⁴³ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 297-307.

⁴⁴ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 227.

⁴⁵ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 88 and 695-700.

⁴⁶ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 436.

literature and history⁴⁷. The *Cambridge University Library* has come into possession of the whole of the valuable collection of nearly 500 manuscripts and over 1,300 printed or lithographed books in Arabic, Persian and Turkish bequeathed by the late Professor E. G. Browne⁴⁸.

Although the new building for the library of the *University of London* approached completion it was not found possible to transfer the books before the end of the year. An account of the new building and of the progress of the library in the past 30 years (from 40,000 books and 50 readers to 300,000 books and 8,750 readers) was given in the *Report* for 1935⁴⁹. At Oxford work on the extension of the *Bodleian* consisted chiefly in the preparation of working drawings and the beginning of the clearance of the site⁵⁰. At Liverpool the site for the new *University Library* was cleared and building began. It should be noted that the illustrations published in *L.A.R.*⁵¹ do not altogether correspond with the plans which had then been finally adopted. At the *University of Leeds* the books were transferred to the new *Brotherton Library* at Easter and the official opening took place in October. The building and its working arrangements have been described by R. Offor⁵². At Durham the *University Library* has completed a considerable extension, giving shelf-room for some 20,000 books and seating for 80 readers⁵³.

Charles W. E. Leigh, Librarian of the *University of Manchester* and author of a number of valuable bibliographic works including the earliest union list of periodicals issued in this country, celebrated his jubilee as a librarian on March 8th and retired, under the age limit, during the summer⁵⁴.

⁴⁷ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 580; *B.Q.R.*, vol. 8, no. 90, p. 208.

⁴⁸ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 580-81; *Cambridge University Reporter*, 10 Nov. 1936, p. 309.

⁴⁹ University of London: Report of the Library Committee for 1935. 8 pp., London, 1936. (See *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 163-64.)

⁵⁰ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 189.

⁵¹ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 376-79.

⁵² *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 500-06.

⁵³ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 626-27.

⁵⁴ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 122.

In "Die Bibliothek des Britischen Museums"⁵⁵, Edith Rothe gives German readers a clear and reasonably accurate account of the origin and history of the English national library and of its present organization.

Scotland.—The design for the new building of the *National Library of Scotland* was approved by the Royal Fine Art Commission for Scotland⁵⁶ and working drawings are being prepared. Sir Walter Maxwell Scott, Bart., of Abbotsford, presented five cash books of Sir Walter Scott⁵⁷.

HOLLAND.—A special library for Swedish literature was inaugurated in the *University of Amsterdam*. Added to the existing libraries of Danish and Norwegian literature it will afford a very complete centre for Scandinavian studies⁵⁸. *Bibliotheekleven*⁵⁹ published the report of a committee appointed by the *Dutch Union of Librarians* to examine the means by which Dutch belles-lettres can be collected as completely as possible in Dutch libraries. A scheme has been drawn up for co-operation between a number of large libraries, including the *Royal Library*, the *University Libraries* and various public and academic libraries, in the collection of the works of authors of generally acknowledged work, published since 1880 and restricted in the first instance to North Netherlandish writers. It is proposed that one of the libraries should keep a bibliography on cards, those representing works already in one or more libraries being marked accordingly while the unmarked cards will form a basis for future acquisitions by mutual agreement between the libraries.

HUNGARY.—The library of the *Pázmány Péter University* at Budapest is undergoing reorganization. The *University Library* at Debrecen is the only one in Hungary possessing a new building specially designed for the purpose and has accommodation for 1,000,000 volumes⁶⁰.

⁵⁵ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 681-95.

⁵⁶ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 392.

⁵⁷ *National Library of Scotland: Report*, 1936.

⁵⁸ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 163.

⁵⁹ Vol. 20, 1936, pp. 4-11.

⁶⁰ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 389-90.

ITALY.—The new library of the *University of Rome* was inaugurated at the end of 1935. Uniting the libraries of the Faculties of Law and Letters it now possesses 370,000 volumes. The *University of Genoa* has a new reading room and a book-store to hold 250,000 volumes⁶¹. A well-illustrated historical account of this library by Pietro Nurna appeared in *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*⁶², where also Giacomo Perticone described the library and the publications of the *Chamber of Deputies* which are of more than particular importance.

JAPAN.—The library of the *University of Kyoto* was destroyed by fire but most of the books were saved⁶³.

JUGO-SLAVIA.—The government has made a provisional grant of 7,500,000 Dinar (about £30,000) towards a new library building for the *University of Ljubljana*⁶⁴.

LATVIA.—The report by M. Stumbergs⁶⁵ on the libraries of Latvia shows that the *State Library*, which was founded only in 1919, now possesses 400,000 volumes, while the *University Library* has 106,000 volumes, in addition to the libraries of the Faculties. An exchange of publications is made with 300 foreign university libraries.

NEW ZEALAND.—In *Canterbury University College*, Christchurch, the Macmillan Brown Collection of some 14,000 volumes, which is especially rich in works dealing with the Pacific area, has now been added to the library and regulations have been made for its use⁶⁶.

NORWAY.—The *University Library of Oslo*, which serves also as the *National Library*, completed its administrative wing and plans for a parallel wing to provide a main reading room with storage under it for 600,000 books and 25,000 periodicals were to be passed by the Storting⁶⁷. Three new posts were created for librarians to take charge of the Division

⁶¹ Gregori (L. de) in *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 154.

⁶² Vol. 10, No. 3, 1936, maggio-giugno.

⁶³ *Zeitschrift für Deutschlands Buchdrucker*, 1936, Jan. 28. (*Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 179.)

⁶⁴ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 466.

⁶⁵ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 158.

⁶⁶ *Canterbury University College, Christchurch: The Library Record*, vol. 1, nos. 1-2, 1936.

⁶⁷ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 667.

of Maps and Prints, International Exchange and the Music Department⁶⁸. A notable accession of oriental literature was gained by the purchase of the library of the late Fr. Schjøth numbering more than 1,300 volumes⁶⁹. An interesting account of the library is given by Olaf Klose, of Kiel, in "Bericht über meinen Aufenthalt als Austauschbibliothekar an der UB Oslo"⁷⁰, describing his experience there as exchange librarian.

POLAND.—J. Grycz⁷¹ in his account of Polish libraries in 1934-35 reported a decrease of the state grant with a corresponding diminution of foreign purchases and periodical subscriptions. Most of the great libraries suffer also from lack of space and unsuitable buildings. Certain measures have been taken to ease the situation. There is compulsory deposit in the *National Library* and in seven Regional Libraries, and the University Libraries are entitled to demand a copy of books which they need. Greater specialisation is to be observed and the *University of Warsaw* has handed over to the *National Library* its cartographic collection, to be followed by its collections of manuscripts and of early printed books. Manuscripts recovered from Russia have enriched the *National Library*. A scheme for the exchange of duplicates has been brought into effect. Organization has been regularised.

SPAIN.—In his account⁷² of the progress of Spanish libraries and bibliography in 1935-36, H. Serís was able to report great activity in many directions. Certain improvements have been made in the *National Library* and it was hoped by means of a new photographic machine to complete the new card catalogue in two years. The libraries of the *Universities of Barcelona and Santiago* were in process of reorganization and disinfection from the ravages of insects. The library of the *University of Oviedo* has been reconstituted after its destruction. It is to be feared that the civil

⁶⁸ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, p. 161.

⁶⁹ *Bog og Bibliotek*, 1936, pp. 32 seq. (*Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 228).

⁷⁰ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 255-61.

⁷¹ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, pp. 111-13.

⁷² *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, pp. 135-44.

war which broke out during the summer will have caused irreparable damage to some of the Spanish libraries. Exact information must await the ending of the present situation.

SWITZERLAND.—The report of M. Godet⁷³ on Swiss libraries from May 1935 to May 1936 shows a certain reduction in funds allocated which was partly offset by grants for the relief of unemployment. Some libraries have relieved their expenditure by selling duplicates as well as by exchanging them. And some measure of economy has been affected by allotting certain classes of publications to particular libraries to avoid unnecessary duplication.

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.—The usual "Library Statistics from Institutions of Higher Education, 1935-36," appeared early in 1937⁷⁴. An effort is being undertaken to make them more complete and comprehensive. So far as they go, they show that in the College and University Libraries in 1935-36 55.1 per cent of total library expenditure went on service (1932-33 : 56 per cent) and 35 per cent on books, periodicals and binding (1932-33 : 41 per cent). There is only a slight increase in individual salaries, a matter for justified concern since in the previous year many of these were much below those of the peak year. A reasoned criticism of the returns was made by B. Lamar Johnson⁷⁵, who pleaded for greater co-operation in the publishing of more significant statistics.

The *A.L.A. College Library Advisory Board* proposes when funds are available to compile "Suggested Procedures for Surveying College Libraries" and to invite specialists to indicate their willingness to aid librarians who have made such self-surveys by paying visits and giving the benefit of advice based on wide experience⁷⁶. The general certification of librarians was mooted in U.S.A. and Charles A. Stone read a paper at the *A.L.A. Conference on "Certification for College and University Librarians"*⁷⁷.

⁷³ *I.F.L.A. Publ.*, 8, 1936, pp. 167-69.

⁷⁴ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 31, 1937, pp. 99-120.

⁷⁵ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 31, 1937, pp. 96-98.

⁷⁶ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 99-100.

⁷⁷ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 643-44 and 879-82.

At the "Library Gifts Round Table" of the *A.L.A.* Conference, Edward Caldwell gave an address on the organization, operation and results of "The Friends of Knox College Library"⁷⁸, which showed how much may be done for a College Library by such means.

Fisk University purchased the library of the Y.M.C.A. Graduate School at Nashville, of nearly 12,000 volumes, thus merging two notable collections dealing with the Negro⁷⁹.

There is a welcome number of notable building projects. The *University of Pennsylvania*⁸⁰ is making plans to erect a new 2,000,000 dollar library building in celebration of its bicentenary which falls in 1940. *Vassar College*⁸¹ is to have an addition to its library building which will double the present capacity of 200,000 volumes. *Denison University*⁸², Granville, Ohio, has received a gift of \$300,000 for a new library building. Towards the end of 1936 plans were being made for a new general library building for the *University of Virginia*⁸³, at Charlottesville, to cost more than \$950,000. The General Library of the *University of Minnesota*⁸⁴ is erecting a four-storey addition to its stack and gaining almost 7½ miles of shelving. *Milwaukee-Downer College*⁸⁵, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, has made its plans for its new \$250,000 library.

Walter Crosby Eells made a study of "The Center of Population of Higher Educational Libraries in the United States, 1870-1930"⁸⁶ and found that the library centre is far east of the higher educational centre, though not so much as in 1920. He concludes that there is a distinct need for greater library expansion westward and southward in order to give a proper service to students there.

⁷⁸ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 807-09.

⁷⁹ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, p. 893.

⁸⁰ *School and Society*, 1936, p. 731 (*Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 466-67).

⁸¹ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, p. 70.

⁸² *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 274.

⁸³ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, p. 931 and *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, p. 951.

⁸⁴ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, p. 416.

⁸⁵ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 291 and 547.

⁸⁶ *L.Q.*, 6, 1936, pp. 175-81.

CHAPTER III

SPECIAL LIBRARIES

By CYRIL C. BARNARD, B.A., F.L.A., *Librarian, London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, and*

ARTHUR D. ROBERTS, F.L.A., *Librarian, Technical Library, Birmingham*

COMMERCIAL and Technical Libraries, which last year formed the subject of a separate chapter, have this year been included in this chapter along with other special libraries. By this means we have avoided an arbitrary parcelling out of the field to be covered by the two authors, who are jointly responsible for the whole.

GENERAL

The rise and development of special libraries is traced in a most original and stimulating style by O. Thyregod in the third section of his book¹. Mediæval special collections were generally swallowed up in general libraries, but in America successful special libraries were established quite early in the 18th century and even such modern subjects as journalism and insurance had their own special libraries by 1842 and 1845 respectively. The modern special library profession owes its origin to J. C. Dana who formed a "business library" at Newark, N.J., and to the foundation of the Special Libraries Association in 1909.

Though not a text-book, H. P. Spratt's volume² is of considerable value to students of librarianship. It describes only those libraries that Mr. Spratt visited in London, on the European continent and in America, and no claim is made to

¹ Thyregod (Oskar): *Die Kulturfunktion der Bibliothek*. 219 pp. Haag: *Martinus Nijhoff*, 1936.

² Spratt (H. Philip): *Libraries for scientific research in Europe and America*. 227 pp., 1 pl. London: *Grafton & Co.*, 1936.

comprehensiveness. The data given vary; sometimes the practice of a library is described in detail while others are dealt with summarily. Mr. Spratt's voyage must have been something in the nature of a crusade on behalf of the Universal Decimal Classification; we get the impression that its adoption by all scientific libraries is not only desirable but imminent. Many of the descriptions in the book, although occupying only a page or two, contain more information than some of the articles we are treating separately.

There is a dismal report from the Technische Hochschule, Dresden³. The money available serves practically only for maintaining continuations and periodicals, the staff is much too small, and there are large demands made on the library for loans. New accessions are now printed on one side of the paper only, to permit their being cut up and mounted on cards.

The Netherlands Institute for Documentation and Registration has played the part of a clearing house for scientific information and has itself refrained from collecting material for supplying information⁴. It has supplied literature references, reprints and photocopies for several years, and its publication "*Repertorium Technicum*" has proved of great value. In the latter part of 1934 the Netherlands Government placed the extensive literature resources of the Netherlands Patent Office at the Institute's disposal.

The position in Sweden is considered at length by Hilda S. Lindstedt⁵. The aim is to make the *Tekniska Högskola* the central library for technical literature. It contains about 75,000 volumes classified by a modified form of the Library of Congress scheme and a deposit set of the Library of Congress cards. A union catalogue of scientific and technical periodicals available (chiefly in Stockholm and Uppsala) has been printed.

The first report of the sub-committee on special libraries and information centres of the *I.F.L.A.*⁶ states that there are

³ Koch (E): *Z.f.B.* 53, 1936, pp. 385-7.

⁴ Valk: *I.I.D. Communications*, 3, 1936, Roe 1—Roe 10.

⁵ *Teknisk tidskrift*, 66, 1936, pp. 439-46.

⁶ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 73-82.

three questions of special interest on which the sub-committee will concentrate. These are the provision of (1) adequate bibliographies, (2) abstracts and digests, and (3) summaries of progress and of the state of knowledge reached at a certain date. The overlapping and lack of uniformity in making references mitigates against the usefulness of bibliographies. There is the same multiplicity of sources for abstracts and digests, but conditions are even more onerous, for specialists are needed for their compilation and the research worker needs abstracts in his own language. Summaries of progress are, perhaps, the ideal element in an information service and their value is being more and more appreciated.

The plan of Science Service of Washington, U.S.A., for relieving the pressure on the space of periodicals by highly specialized and lengthy articles appears in two journals⁷. Abstracts of such articles will be published and a note at the end will state that the full paper is obtainable from Science Service. Papers will be deposited with this body and will have a serial number. A considerable number of societies have adhered to the scheme, which involves microphotography.

A particularly complete article on special library organization⁸ divides the service provided into two types: the passive, that is the recording, filing and dissemination of information which naturally flows to the department, and the active function of going after the information required, anticipating the needs of the clientèle and watching for developments. It is important to provide for the discontinuance of indexing, etc., in subjects in which interest is dead, and, equally, it is necessary to secure due authorization before embarking on the indexing of a new subject. The cultivation and establishment of contacts with external organizations and specialized sources of information is also essential.

⁷ *I.I.D. Communicationes*, April 1936, ZZ3-ZZ8. Also: *Science*, 8³, 1936, pp. 402-4.

⁸ Brightman, R: *Industrial Chemist*, 140, 1936, pp. 396-400.

AGRICULTURE

There are 279,000 volumes and 3,566 periodicals in the library of the *International Institute of Agriculture at Rome*⁹. The purpose of the Institute is to form as complete a collection as possible of the world's agricultural literature, using that term in a very wide sense. Its value as a centre of documentation is greatly enhanced by three bibliographical indexes which it maintains in addition to the ordinary catalogues. These indexes are also described in a hand-book issued by the library¹⁰. A plan and a description of the reading-room (which accommodates 35 readers and where about 600 periodicals are displayed) are also included.

Some of the activities of the International Committee of Agricultural Librarians, founded in 1935, centre round this library and are described by its librarian¹¹. The Institute is said to be preparing a world list of agricultural libraries and information centres and we are also told that an annotated list of current agricultural bibliographies of the world is nearly complete.

In his report to the Danish library conference Lauritz Nielsen¹² states that the budget of the library of the *Veterinary and Agricultural College at Copenhagen* has been increased by 3,000 kr. to 13,000 kr. This will have a salutary effect on the periodical subscriptions and enable gaps to be filled. This is one of the libraries dealt with by Mr. Spratt², who also describes the *Library of the Department of Agriculture at Washington* which appears to be larger than that of the International Institute at Rome for it has more books and receives about 4,360 current periodicals.

Besides serving its parent institution the library of the *Veterinary and Agricultural College at Ås* takes its place as a special library in the whole Norwegian system¹³.

⁹ Statistiques pour l'année 1935 : *A. et B.*, 2, 1936, pp. 66-9.

¹⁰ Library readers' handbook. International Institute of Agriculture. 8 pp. Rome, 1936.

¹¹ Frauendorfer, Sigmund von : *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 626-7, 648-58.

¹² *Bogens Verden*, 18, 1936, pp. 190-7.

¹³ Johnson, Arne : *Bok og Bibliotek*, 3, 1936, pp. 342-5.

Books and even periodicals are often acquired which the college, as such, does not need, but which are of use to others who visit it when engaged on special studies, or for sending out on loan. The librarian author suggests ways in which he could assist public libraries. In the same connection the *Telemark Agricultural Library at Sørve* gives its regulations for loans to public libraries¹⁴.

The basic stock of the library of the *Agricultural and Veterinary College at Ankara* in Turkey was founded in 1933 by the German government¹⁵ and German books form 80 per cent of the whole, but 90 per cent of the readers are Turkish. There are about 3,000 of the latter every month. A three months' course in the theory and practice of librarianship has been started. An article centring round the *Department of Agricultural Library at Pretoria* by S. J. Kritzinger¹⁶ is chiefly devoted to deploring the ill effects of decentralization and independence on the part of departmental libraries.

ART

The Frick Fine Art Reference Library, New York¹⁷, moved into new premises in a thirteen-storey building in January 1935. It contains 200,000 reproductions of works of art and over 45,000 books, periodicals and catalogues. The staff of 30 has among them an enthusiastic group of experts in certain schools of art. The new building has steel book-stacks, a Snead conveyor, two reading-rooms, four cubicles for advanced workers and a photostat.

BANKING AND FINANCE

Four American articles need mention here, though of limited interest to English librarians. The most detailed is one by Rose L. Vormelker describing the sources used for obtaining investment information for the Business Informa-

¹⁴ Telemark landbruksbibliotek. *Bok og Bibliotek*, 3, 1936, pp. 349-50.

¹⁵ Stummvoll, J: *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, p. 273.

¹⁶ *South African Libraries*, 3, 1936, pp. 97-100.

¹⁷ Manning, Ethelwyn: *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 136-8.

tion Bureau of the *Cleveland Public Library*¹⁸. Mildred A. Lee describes how libraries in investment houses can best supply selective data on corporations and industries¹⁹. All the information, the latest reports, prospectuses, newspaper clippings, etc., are kept under each corporation's name in a special file and the firms are classified into 45 groups. Marguerite Burnett, the librarian of the Federal Reserve Bank, describes some of the most useful publications of the previous year²⁰ and there is an account of the methods of organizing a special library addressed to bankers by E. I. Chalfant²¹.

BOTANY

The *Imperial Bureau of Plant Genetics, Cambridge*, described by P. S. Hudson²², bases its work on a card catalogue of literature arranged by the Universal Decimal Classification. The dissemination of current information is effected through the quarterly *Plant Breeding Abstracts*, the position of research in particular branches being reviewed from time to time in bibliographical monographs. Translations and fuller abstracts are also provided, and the Bureau serves as a link to put investigators in one part of the empire in touch with workers in allied subjects elsewhere.

The *Botanisk Haves Bibliotek, Copenhagen*, has¹², in accordance with a proposal of the Danish library commission, become the chief state library for botany, this subject being no longer covered by the University Library. The premises in the Botanical Museum are inadequate and a separate library wing to the museum building is projected, but the matter is still only in a preparatory stage.

BUSINESS AND COMMERCE

The librarian of the *Industrial Research Bureau*, created by the *Government of India* in 1935 to act as a clearing house of

¹⁸ *A.L.A. Bull.* 30, 1936, pp. 534-40.

¹⁹ *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 48-9.

²⁰ *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 38-41.

²¹ *Banking*, 28, 1936, pp. 68-9.

²² *I.I.D. Communicationes*, 3, 1936, Hu. 1—Hu. 8.

information regarding industrial activities in the country, describes the sources, both official and unofficial, from which this information is gathered²³. The Bureau has acquired 3,000 works in the first year of its library's existence and both these and the entries in the first of its bulletins, "Bibliography of Industrial Publications published in India from 1921" are classified by the Universal Decimal Classification. The lists of publications of various Indian bodies which the author gives are of considerable value.

Miss Alexander discusses the replies to a questionnaire sent to 47 corporations to discover how much business men appreciated printed sources of information²⁴. In general, trade papers and the leading trade association to which the corporation belonged were deemed the most important sources; then came the commercial information services to which the corporation subscribed, the government, and, lastly, the public library. Miss Alexander suggests that the Special Libraries Association should employ a trained librarian to serve as a consultant to organizations wishing to establish libraries. Meanwhile a pamphlet issued by this association deserves a wide circulation among business houses²⁵.

G. A. van Riemsdijk²⁶ expresses the need for a small special library to supply the necessary economic information for a business undertaking. Besides possessing technical knowledge of librarianship the librarian must be trained in general economics, be familiar with economical and statistical publications; know something of the industry in which he is employed, and be able to obtain information which is not available in his own library as quickly as possible from outside sources. A description of the library of *Tokyo University of Commerce* has been published in a Japanese journal²⁷.

²³ Kalyanaraman, M. R: *ASLIB. Rep. of Proc. of 13th Conf.* 1936, pp. 110-23.

²⁴ *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 184-8.

²⁵ *The Special library in business*, 16 pp. New York, 1936.

²⁶ *BiLev*, 21, 1936, pp. 231-4.

²⁷ Aso-Fukumaru: *Toshokan Kenkyū*, 9, 1936, pp. 425-36.

²⁸ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 131-2.

DENTISTRY

E. Rebecca Griffith²⁸ suggests the formation of a central office at the headquarters of the American Dental Association which could furnish information to libraries, make the dental profession "library-conscious" and give instruction in library technique to dental societies and individuals who require it. Such an office might be the germ from which a dental library profession would finally evolve. This need for "library-consciousness" on the part of the dental profession is the burden of two other articles. Dorothea F. Radusch²⁹ maintains that teachers try to cover in their classes all the information they wish students to acquire and fail to establish the habit of searching for it in the literature. In dentistry bibliographic tools are unfortunately poor. The *Quarterly Cumulative Index Medicus* is valuable, but *Black's Index to Periodical Dental Literature*, which is better known, is totally inadequate. Dentistry has no special abstract journal. *Chemical Abstracts* and *Nutrition Abstracts* should be used by dentists. Mabel Walker³⁰ also discusses means of "Creating interest in the dental library," such as instruction to freshmen in the use of the library and the employment of student assistants to whom students will more readily turn in asking for help. "The periodicals useful in the dental library" are indicated by Ingo Hackh³¹. Besides scientific and medical fundamentals, the dentist has also to be conversant with current literature on technical subjects like metallurgy, ceramics, rubber and plastic materials, which introduce a number of periodicals not found in medical libraries. The results of a statistical survey of dental periodicals show, firstly, which periodicals contain the most references per volume and hence presumably the most carefully prepared papers, and, secondly, which periodicals, both dental and others, are most frequently quoted in dental journals and hence presumably most useful in a dental library. A table is given showing the 50 most-quoted periodicals in order of frequency of quotation from dental journals.

²⁸ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 125-30.

³⁰ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 120-4.

³¹ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 109-12.

DRAMA

Edwin Elliott Willoughby³² writes on the *Folger Shakespeare Library* at *Washington*. A brief historical note is followed by a description of the new building completed in 1932. There are approximately 93,000 volumes, including 79 copies of the First Folio. Source material, portraits and relics are well represented. The library is visited by over 400 people daily.

The *Biblioteca Teatrale Roberto Forges Davanzati*, at *Rome*, is described by Alessandro de Stefani³³. This library owes its origin to the Società Italiana degli Autori ed Editori, all members of which have to deposit a copy of their own theatrical works, but there are still some serious lacunæ in the library.

FEMINIST MOVEMENT

The *Internationaal Archief voor de Vrouwenbeweging, Amsterdam*³⁴, was officially opened on 19 Dec. 1936. Its object is to collect everything both national and international and whether in the form of books, pamphlets, periodicals, letters or portraits which has a bearing on the feminist movement. Many treasures, amongst them a complete collection of pamphlets by Josephine Butler, have already been acquired, and forty societies, including many abroad, send their publications regularly.

HISTORY AND GEOGRAPHY

The new building of the *Royal Empire Society, London*, was opened in November 1936. Its library is described by Douglas H. Varley³⁵ who devotes himself mainly to architectural features and the arrangement of the books. Besides works on the overseas empire the library contains voyages and travels, books on foreign colonization and the Great War, botany, poetry, languages and international law.

³² *L.W.*, 38, 1936, pp. 227-9.

³³ *Accademie e biblioteche d'Italia*, 10, 1936, pp. 100-3.

³⁴ *BiLev.*, 22, 1937, pp. 43-44.

³⁵ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 600-3.

There is an extensive parliamentary collection, while sets of "The Times," "Hansard," proceedings of learned societies and the publications of the League of Nations are important features. The library has a staff of eight and a special point is made of bibliographical work.

MEDICINE

The outstanding event is the celebration of the centenary of the *Army Medical Library, Washington*, better known as the Library of the Surgeon-General's Office, the largest and most important medical library in the world. The oration on this occasion was delivered by Sir Humphry Rolleston³⁶. A special folder issued in commemoration of the event contains three pamphlets, in one of which the new Librarian, Col. Harold W. Jones, describes the "Routine Operation of the Army Medical Library." The other two, by the retiring Librarian, Maj. Edgar Erskine Hume³⁷⁻³⁸, give the history of the library itself, of its *Index Catalogue* and of the *Index Medicus*.

A great deal of useful work, particularly in its various committees, has been done by the *Medical Library Association*, which is insufficiently known in Europe. The proceedings of the annual meeting held in June 1936³⁹ contain reports of all these activities, which are too numerous even for mention here.

Guy S. Ford⁴⁰ in "A second-aid kit for medical librarians" maintains that medical men by their training and by the peculiarly individualistic nature of their contact with their fellow-men are largely shut off from any understanding of social movements. Medical librarians should therefore strive to put their readers into contact with literature on social problems.

Mrs. Eileen R. Cunningham discusses three problems

³⁶ *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 2, 1936, pp. 1094-8; *Lancet*, 2, 1936, pp. 1286-9; *New Orleans Med. & Surg. Journ.* 89, 1937, pp. 333-9.

³⁷ *Army Med. Bull.*, 1936, No. 37.

³⁸ *Military Surgeon*, 78, 1936, pp. 241-67.

³⁹ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 3-57.

⁴⁰ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 95-99.

under the title of " Looking forward : possible developments in the publication of medical literature " ⁴¹. These are (1) the increasing quantity of material available for publication ; (2) the increasing difficulties and complexities involved in obtaining and publishing abstracts of scientific literature, and (3) the enormous, steadily increasing number of journals and the difficulty of supplying even a small proportion of them to investigators. For (1) she suggests the plan of Mr. Watson Davis⁷. A somewhat similar proposal by Dr. M. J. Polissar⁴² is to deposit copies of the unabridged typed MSS. in 25 key libraries to be photographed and distributed to investigators. For (2) she approves Dr. Paul Lamson's⁴³ suggestion that as a condition of publication authors should be obliged to supply their own abstracts. A comprehensive abstract journal covering clinical material is a need which was also stressed by one of the committees of the Medical Library Association mentioned above. Abstract sections in specialized journals with consequent duplication could then be eliminated. Some co-ordinating institution should function as the publishing centre and as a depository for ms. data of too detailed a nature to be included in the clinical journals. (3) To reduce the number of medical journals the local society publications in the U.S.A. should be amalgamated into larger regional journals.

The proposal to establish " A central medical library " ⁴⁴ for South Africa is to be brought before the South African Medical Association. The books and journals of the Cape Western Branch might form a nucleus stock. The exchanges and review books received by the South African Medical Journal would be added and the library might co-operate with the medical libraries of the universities to avoid overlapping. The cost of upkeep would be largely that of administration and could be met from Federal Council funds.

An interesting " Survey of Medical libraries in China " by

⁴¹ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 100-108.

⁴² *Science*, n.s. 81, 1935, p. 229.

⁴³ *Science*, n.s. 74, 1931, pp. 486-7.

⁴⁴ *South African Libraries*, 3, 1936, pp. 95-6. Also: *South African Med. Journ.*, 9, 1935, p. 517.

Mrs. Julie R. Tai⁴⁵ is based on answers to a questionnaire sent to the 27 medical schools in China. Libraries of the literature of western medicine are of quite recent growth, only one having been founded before 1900 and the majority since 1915. English is the foreign language generally used in medical schools and most medical libraries follow American methods, but many of those attached to government schools are on German lines. Shanghai has more medical libraries than any other city, viz. eleven. That of the *Henry Lester Institute of Medical Research*, which has shown great development since its foundation in 1930, is the subject of an article by Edmund H. T. Chen⁴⁶. A union catalogue for all the medical libraries in Shanghai is in course of preparation. The *Library of the Wei Sheng Shu, Nanking*, also shows great promise and, it is hoped, will assume the rôle of national medical library for China with an extensive inter-library loan service. The *Library of the Peiping Union Medical College*, founded in 1912, is at present the largest in China. It has a trained librarian, Mrs. Tai, and eight assistants including two library school graduates.

The June 1936 issue of the *Journal of Social Hygiene*, vol. 22, is the *Fourth Annual Library Number* and contains several articles dealing with medical libraries. Charles Frankenberg discusses the relations between "Medical libraries, the medical profession and social hygiene literature" (pp. 262-264) and suggests that the American Social Hygiene Association should co-operate with the medical profession and medical librarians to establish in a selected group of larger medical libraries a well-stocked collection of books on sex, classified as suitable for (1) physicians, (2) parents and teachers, (3) young men and women contemplating marriage, (4) the newly married, and (5) young men and women of high school and college age.

In 1921 several American voluntary health agencies formed a co-operative organization, the National Health Council, one of the first of whose acts was to pool their libraries to form

⁴⁵ *Chinese Med. Journ.*, 49, 1935, pp. 917-25.

⁴⁶ *Boone Library School Quarterly*, 8, 1936, pp. 621-634.

the *National Health Library, New York*, which is described by its librarian, Miss Mabel L. Towner⁴⁷. About 500 periodicals are received by exchange or subscription. These are indexed on cards and a selection listed in the weekly Library Index, a four-page mimeographed publication circulated to 200 agencies and individuals.

The *Bibliothek des Institutes für Geschichte der Medizin, Leipzig*, is described by Hönncher⁴⁸. In addition to historical works the library collects also modern writings that promise to become later of historical importance. Specialities are mediæval German medicine, Paracelsus, the history of anatomical illustration, the history of epidemics, folklore and folk-medicine. The number of printed works (including re-prints, etc.) exceeds 25,000.

The library attached to the *Accademia e Museo di Storia dell' Arte Sanitaria in Rome*, described by Umberto Tergolina-Gislanzoni-Brasco⁴⁹, is housed in 17th century walnut shelving from a Roman convent. In all there are 600 volumes and 2,000 pamphlets, nearly all relating to the history of the sanitary art, including such subjects as the history of medicine, pharmacy, chemistry as it bears upon the hygienic arts, and veterinary science.

MILITARY AND NAVAL SCIENCE

Walter Buchler divides the "Service libraries in Australia"⁵⁰ into three categories: the Department of Defence Library, the district base libraries, and the united service institutions. The *Department of Defence Library at Melbourne* contains over 20,000 volumes and subscribes to all the relevant service and technical journals. Besides serving as a general reference library for the Forces, it is the source of study for officers preparing for examinations. The district base libraries serve as far as possible, in the various military districts, the same objects as the Department of Defence

⁴⁷ *Journ. of Social Hygiene*, 22, 1936, pp. 241-4.

⁴⁸ *Z.f.B.* 53, 1936, pp. 218-20.

⁴⁹ *Accademie e Biblioteche d'Italia*, 10, 1936, pp. 19-24.

⁵⁰ *Librarian*, 26, 1936, pp. 105-106.

Library. In each capital city of the Commonwealth there is a United Service Institution which has an up-to-date library supported by a government grant and members' subscriptions. There are also libraries attached to the *Royal Military College of Australia* at Sydney and to the *Royal Australian Naval College* at Flinders Naval Depôt, Victoria.

Lauritz Nielsen includes a description of the *Library of the Navy, Copenhagen*, in his article⁵¹. This is a state special library, only recently organized, which embraces technical naval and nautical literature with works on arctic exploration and sea voyages. Two volumes of a printed catalogue have been issued.

MODERN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURE

In 1936 the English library *Anglia*⁵¹, hitherto the property of a society of that name, was made over to the University of Utrecht. This library was the creation of Professor Fijn van Draat in 1915 with the collaboration of a number of enthusiastic students. The object was to purchase the best editions of English authors and many works on art, history and theology in so far as they related to English literature.

NURSING

The *Bellevue School of Nursing Library, New York*, figures prominently in several publications. The *Library Handbook*⁵² is divided into three parts, the first of which deals with the administration of a nursing school library and gives two useful lists : one of fifty periodicals and the other of sources of free and inexpensive material. Parts 2 and 3 treat of cataloguing and classification and include a list of subject headings and an outline of the scheme of classification used in the *Bellevue School of Nursing Library*, which has recently been re-classified and re-catalogued. The work of this library is described by Ethel Wigmore⁵³. It serves over

⁵¹ *BiLev*, 22, 1937, pp. 47-8.

⁵² Library handbook for schools of nursing. New York : *National League of Nursing Education*, 1936, \$2. 50.

⁵³ *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 81-2.

1,000 readers, and instruction is given in the use of the library. 35 of the staff are regularly notified of recent additions.

POLITICAL SCIENCE

The provisional sub-committee on parliamentary libraries formed at the International Congress at Madrid in 1935 has issued its report⁵⁴. A circular was sent to the parliamentary libraries of the countries represented at or adhering to the Congress inviting them to join this sub-committee and to reply to a questionnaire. The answers are summarized in this report, dealing among others with the following subjects : co-ordination of methods of work and publication ; the publication of summaries of laws, session by session, for exchange purposes ; the general exchange of publications ; administration ; and legal deposit.

Giacomo Perticone⁵⁵ describes the library of the Chamber of Deputies founded in 1849 by the Subalpine Parliament. It is a special library devoted to law, economics and finance. Official acts of foreign countries are obtained by exchange and there are now 15,000 of them, besides 6,000 Italian. The stock amounts to 150,000 books, 50,000 volumes of periodicals, and 40,000 pamphlets. There are 633 periodicals of which 400 are current. A short history of the library is followed by a description of the classification scheme, the work of the librarian Pietro Fea, which was published in 1894, and an outline of the nature and scope of the various catalogues, bibliographical indexes and special collections.

PUBLIC LIBRARIES: COMMERCIAL AND TECHNICAL DEPARTMENTS

A report of a joint meeting of the London and Home Counties branch of the Library Association and ASLIB discusses the provision and use of business and technical literature in the London public libraries⁵⁶. Variations in the quality of the services provided by the various boroughs and

⁵⁴ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 83-89.

⁵⁵ *Accademie e biblioteche d'Italia*, 10, 1936, pp. 159-179.

⁵⁶ The Public Library : its place in the industrial life of London. Supplement to *ASLIB Information*, No. 30, December 1936.

ignorance on the part of the business man were causes of the present unsatisfactory state of affairs. Furthermore, despite the presence of the research bureaux, the lack of one central commercial and technical library or information bureau was undoubtedly felt. The weakness was, as Mr. Creed put it, "inherent in the municipal organization of London." Various palliatives were suggested and it was finally resolved that the two associations concerned be requested to appoint a joint committee to consider the question and to report.

Very little has appeared during the year on the administration of special commercial and technical departments; probably the best material is in Mr. Spratt's book² where the activities of five such American libraries are described. Russell J. Schunk⁵⁷ stresses the value of a technical service to individuals employed in industry, mechanics, welders, etc., in contrast to serving larger corporations. Printed publicity is necessary to draw their attention to the library. A description of the overhauling of the stock at Toledo follows. Two articles by A. D. Roberts may be mentioned: one describes the sources used for selecting the books in a technical department⁵⁸ and another draws the attention of metallurgists to the services available there⁵⁹.

TECHNOLOGY

The "Tekniska Litteratursällskap"⁶⁰⁻⁶¹ was founded in January 1936 with the object of bringing together reviewers, publicists, librarians and others who act as intermediaries between technical literature and technicians. Such subjects as nomenclature, reviewing, classification and cataloguing, distribution, and information services are to be discussed and lectures are to be given. A hundred members were enrolled at the outset and three numbers of a series of publications have already been issued⁶¹.

The four divisions of work in the *Library of the Standard*

⁵⁷ *L. J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 475-8.

⁵⁸ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 455-8.

⁵⁹ *Metallurgia*, 14, 1936, pp. 77-8.

⁶⁰ *Nord. tid.*, 23, 1936, pp. 35-6, 235.

⁶¹ *ASLIB. Rept. of Proc. of 13th Conf.*, 1936, p. 132.

*Oil Company*⁶² are abstracting, searching and reference work, translating and routine library work. For the technical division of the staff, whose duties include abstracting, making searches, especially regarding patent rights, and translating highly technical or confidential material, knowledge of library science is not essential, whereas a knowledge of the fundamentals of one or more of the sciences and a reading familiarity with at least French and German are. Miss B. M. Dent, the librarian, says⁶³ that in addition to electrical subjects the *Library of Metropolitan Vickers Electrical Co. Ltd.* covers accountancy, employment questions, and subjects of interest to the sales department. Among its activities are the issuing of a weekly bulletin, a scrutiny of patents, the handling of patents taken out by the research staff and the interchange of information with associated companies. 300 periodicals are taken and the Universal Decimal Classification is in use. A further extension of the work of an industrial library is in helping with schemes for educating employees⁶⁴.

⁶² Brown (Delbert F) : *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 99-101.

⁶³ The Work of the research department intelligence service. *Modern engineering practice and methods of training*, Metropolitan Vickers Electrical Co. Ltd. 1936, pp. 16-17.

⁶⁴ Mounteer (T. V) : *S.L.*, 27, 1936, pp. 298-301.

CHAPTER IV

URBAN LIBRARIES

By F. SEYMOUR SMITH, F.L.A., *Deputy Borough Librarian,
Hornsey, N.8*

ON May 13th the President of the British L.A. broadcast a message and greetings to American colleagues in Conference at Richmond, Va. It is significant and gratifying that the willing co-operation of two great broadcasting systems should have been forthcoming to make such a pleasant gesture possible.

Perhaps the other significant feature of the year may prove to be the activity which is shown in both the U.S.A. and Great Britain in the study of readers' interests and their reading habits. As might be expected our American colleagues lead the way. Nothing so exhaustive as Ridgway's¹ study has appeared outside the U.S.A. Much of the work appears to lead to obvious results, but when this preliminary study has been thoroughly done, some sound conclusions may be forthcoming. Hansford² has provided a useful summary of the work done in this field in England. The important difference to note is that the enquiries made at Croydon, Fulham and East Ham were in the main utilitarian ; those in the U.S.A. have had a wider basis of philosophical enquiry. Moreover, the latter have included investigations among those who do not use the public libraries at all.

The L.A. Conference at Margate also provided some basic facts. These centred chiefly on origins and actual work in progress. The Presidential address³ dipped a

¹ Ridgway, Helena. Community studies in reading : reading habits of adult non-users of the public library. *L.Q.* 6, Jan., 1936. pp. 1-33.

² Hansford, F. E. What adults read. *L.W.* 38, 1936. pp. 229-32.

³ Savage, E. A. Presidential address. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 271-80.

little into the future; Thorne⁴ concentrated on the adolescent, while McColvin⁵ again dealt with the place of reading in this age when many have leisure but can find little to do with it. Hence the value of Peyton Hurt's⁶ excellent paper at the ASLIB conference. Although chiefly a résumé of what is done in the U.S.A., the address has a general appeal. A text-book on teaching children the use of books and libraries has appeared⁷. The course outlined should be useful to all children's librarians, to school librarians and to all public librarians who deal with "school visits."

Those who have work to do with the thousands now suffering from the leisure which is enforced and hence too depressing to be enjoyed, will find some excellent suggestions in Morgan's⁸ article. Suggestions and notes of use to every library worker the world over, will also be found in the valuable monthly contributions of Woodbine⁹. It is to be hoped that this feature will benefit by contributions from all who are experts in the subject.

An unusual, but much needed analysis of costs in library work may be the beginning of an exhaustive survey. Fremont Rider¹⁰ deals only with American practice, but the study could easily be adapted by librarians of all countries. Of more than national interest, too, is an article by Munford¹¹. His provocative remarks produced a vigorous reply from Savage¹², but the debate proved disappointing and inconclusive.

⁴ Thorne, W. B. Reading for youth. *Ibid.* pp. 323-28.

⁵ McColvin, L. R. The Library and leisure. *Ibid.* pp. 329-34.

⁶ Hurt, Peyton. Teaching the use of libraries. *ASLIB*. Report of proceedings of 13th Conference, 1936. pp. 24-28.

⁷ Scripture, Elizabeth and M. R. Greer. Find it yourself: a brief course in the use of books and libraries . . . revised by A. J. Hawkes. Teachers' edition, pp. 96. (A. J. Philip; Gravesend, 1936).

⁸ Morgan, J. S. Books and the unemployed. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 144-47.

⁹ Woodbine, Herbert. Reference libraries. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 196-97, and subsequently each month.

¹⁰ Rider, Fremont. Library cost accounting. *L.Q.* 6, 1936. pp. 331-81.

¹¹ Munford, W. A. Some opinions on modern library organization. *L.At.*, 29, 1936. pp. 83-91.

¹² Munford and Savage. *Ibid.* pp. 152-56; pp. 181-84; p. 214.

A stimulating glimpse into the desirable future appeared in a new series. Headicar's¹³ little book is worth serious attention from all students and from those who have new libraries to plan. G. D. H. Cole¹⁴ discussed the present position in academic and professional circles, but he expressed the hope that "a professional man, in public or private employment, may be as free as anyone else to take part in politics, to express his opinion on religion or birth control . . . to divorce or be divorced without loss of position under any circumstances which would not cause the ostracism . . . of a business man or a member of the aristocracy."

NATIONAL

Annual reports in general show that the downward trend in issues has stopped. Many libraries show increases, others appear to be maintaining the level of 1935. One of the latest of the great central libraries, Sheffield, reports some particularly interesting developments. The second year of the unique interchange system between the municipal and the commercial libraries, the works and special libraries in the city has more than justified the experiment. Sixteen additional works libraries have joined, and more than 260 books have been exchanged. 100 pupils from a central Day Commercial College have attended the library for five lessons in the use of libraries and books; the Teachers' and Parents' Collection has attracted hundreds of visitors, and the special arrangements for parents on Saturdays has proved to be popular; so great has been the demand for the students' research rooms that there has been a waiting list. These are typical activities of a system which is making full use of its recently extended facilities.

Statistics for most of the libraries in the country are provided for quick reference and comparison by the publication of the figures obtained from an exhaustive question-

¹³ Headicar, B. M. *The Library of the future* (Practical Library Handbooks, No. 1), 122 pp. Allen and Unwin, 1936.

¹⁴ Cole, G. D. H. *Academic and professional freedom*. *L.At.*, 29, 1936. pp. 58-69.

naire¹⁵. An illuminating comparison of five of the largest public library systems in Great Britain¹⁶ forms a useful commentary on this purely statistical analysis. The Conference at Worthing of the London and Home Counties Branch was concentrated on developments in new urban areas¹⁷. Later a vigorous paper was contributed on an allied problem, the new housing estates which have become a feature of many already large towns. O'Leary¹⁸ should have received an answer to his provocative statements, but none was forthcoming. Reference library policy for the towns surrounding the Metropolis was dealt with by the present writer¹⁹: many of the suggestions made in the paper are now either adopted and in progress or are under more detailed consideration.

Manchester²⁰ has tried for a period of 6 months the pre-war extension of hours for reference and reading rooms to 9.30 p.m. Reports of the results of this experiment are not to hand. Much interest was aroused by an excellent broadcast by the Hon. Secretary²¹ on the library service. His main plea was for clean books and a fully developed service in every district which could afford it. He invited readers to protest to their local authorities if they had legitimate cause for complaint. The evergreen topic of state control was one of the highlights of the Margate Conference of the L.A. Reports of the speeches made in the debate appeared²² in the official journal.

The year as a whole has been remarkable for the unusual number of new buildings erected. Most of these have been small urban buildings, some extensions and rebuildings.

¹⁵ Statistics of Urban Public Libraries in Great Britain and North Ireland (1935). 47 pp. (*L.A.*, 1936. 2s.)

¹⁶ Roberts, A. D. A Comparison of services. *L.W.* 39, 1936. pp. 33-36.

¹⁷ Reported in *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 567-68.

¹⁸ O'Leary, J. G. Library provision in new housing estates. *L.At.*, 29, 1936. pp. 139-44.

¹⁹ Smith, F. Seymour. Reference library policy in London libraries outside the Central Area. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 136-43.

²⁰ Municipal Library notes. *Ibid.* p. 71.

²¹ McColvin, L. R. The Public Library Service. *Ibid.* pp. 5-55.

²² The State and the Public Library: Report of the opening speeches. *Ibid.* p. 474 (inset).

The most interesting were those at Golders Green, Walthamstow, Edinburgh, Tottenham, Wolverhampton, Birkenhead, Beddington and Wallington, Chesterfield, Coulsdon and Purley, Plumstead, Ipswich, St. Pancras and Crewe. Accounts of these and others, with illustrations and plans, have appeared in the official journal²³. Other interesting developments have been chronicled each month by W. B. Stevenson²⁴. One of the most important of these has been the adoption of the Dickman Book-Charging system at 4 London libraries, viz., West Ham (the pioneer), Hornsey, Finchley (North Branch) and Finsbury. At the time of writing all report satisfactory results except Hornsey, where the system is to be discontinued. The only important book has come from India²⁵. A review of this large manual appeared in the *L.A.R.* (March, p. 126.)

IRISH FREE STATE.—The annual report of the Library Association of Ireland²⁶ draws attention to the inadequate financial provisions made in the I.F.S. for the development and maintenance "of a great and important public service." Amongst much other work the Association reports the progress made by the advisory committee on book selection. The duty of the committee is to compile lists of books and circulate them to members. Voluntary service, "a matter that has caused some anxiety," the examination of the Censorship Act with a view to making suggestions for amendments, these and many other matters of importance have been dealt with during the year. The fourth annual conference of the Association was held at Limerick. From the report of this²⁷ it would appear that there is considerable discussion going forward on the question of nationalization and financial help from the State.

INDIA.—At the annual general meeting of the Bengal

²³ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. Nos. 1 to 12.

²⁴ Municipal Library Notes, by W. B. S. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 24, 71, 112, 159, 201, 254, 394, 435, 479, 531, 573, 622.

²⁵ Ranganathan, S. R. Library Administration. 673 pp. Madras *L.A.* (London : Goldston, 1935, 12s. 6d.).

²⁶ *An Leabharlann*, December, 1935.

²⁷ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. p. 251.

Library Association (1935) the President, Kumar Munindra Deb Rai Mohasia, M.L.C., read a message²⁸ from the Governor of Bengal wishing the movement for the encouragement of sound reading through organized and controlled libraries all success. The Hon. Minister for Education, Bengal, had allotted 5,500 Rs. towards libraries and village halls out of the Rural Development grant. The centenary of the Calcutta Library was celebrated at the end of 1935.

NEW ZEALAND.—The Bulletin of the N.Z. Library Association for June, 1936, contains news of extensions and new buildings. Wellington opened its seventh branch library, and reports progress with the new Central Library which will cost £60,000. Developments are on foot at Dunedin, Canterbury, Timaru, New Plymouth, Gisborne and Rangiora.

EUROPE

An excellent survey (illustrated) of the chief libraries of Central Europe has been contributed by the Director of the London University School of Librarianship²⁹.

Belgium.—Baekelmans (Antwerp)³⁰, in an interesting paper read in conference traced the structure of the library movement in Antwerp as it had grown prior to the passing of the Library Act of 1921, surveyed the relation of the urban libraries in Belgium to this law and then described in detail the library system of Antwerp. He advocated the promotion of a union catalogue to encourage a system of inter-library exchanges between the Belgian libraries and the public libraries abroad.

A summary³¹ of Duncan Gray's conference paper in the *L.A.R.* for September 1935, on the minimum standards includes comparable figures for Antwerp. In all cases the figures fell short of Gray's standards.

²⁸ *Ibid.* p. 23.

²⁹ Cowley, J. D. The Libraries of Central Europe. *Ibid.* pp. 387-90 and 597-99.

³⁰ IVe Congress voor Boek en Bibliotheekwezen : Report of the Proceedings of 17th-18th April, 1936.

³¹ *BiGi.*, 15, 1936, pp. 64-65.

Denmark.—An encouraging record comes from Denmark³². A new library has been built at Frederiksberg at a cost of 800,000 crowns, including furniture; a legacy of 35,000 crowns from the Mayor has provided Nyborg with a library; a former mayor of Svendborg has given 187,000 crowns towards the cost of a popular library; and substantial gifts will provide libraries for Thisted and Kolding. Copenhagen, a popular library, still lacks a central building.

The law governing popular libraries (adopted 1920, revised 1931) was again revised (7th April, 1936). Although the amendments were slight the debate in the Rigsdag was notable for the fact that many pleas were made for the raising of the ten per cent. deduction on grants to popular libraries. All libraries receiving more than a certain sum from the state must negotiate with the Director of the State Library Commission before appointing a new librarian. Of the new buildings opened, that at Haslev-Seeland is regarded as a model for a small town library. Some indication of the position in Denmark is given by the excellent reference-book issued from Copenhagen³³. Statistical information, dates of foundation, number of staff employed, financial notes, income, and special collections housed—all these, and many other particulars are given for most of the popular libraries in the country.

Finland.—Alvar Aalto's now famous library at Viipuri has been interestingly described, with illustrations³⁴. In many ways the building appears to be one of the most novel and revolutionary designs for many years. The condition in Finland is on the whole more favourable to development than it has been since 1930, the reduction in the State subvention having been slightly remitted³⁵.

France.—The second centenary of the Bordeaux Public Library was celebrated on June 7th. In spite of the

³² Kristoffersen, M. K. *Danish Public Libraries*. *L. J.*, 61, 1936. pp. 726-27.

³³ Larsen, Knud. *Dansk biblioteksfører*. xix, 158 pp. Busck, Copenhagen, 1936.

³⁴ Carter, E. J. *Viipuri Library, Finland*. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 415-18.

³⁵ I.F.L.A. Publications. 8. 1936. pp. 145-46.

continuance of the economic crisis the progress of the libraries in the larger provincial towns has been noteworthy. There are new libraries at Chauny, Belfort, Saint Quentin. Many others have been renovated; the hours of opening have been extended and summer closing has been discontinued in many towns. Yet much remains to be done: the chief obstacle is the very low incomes for libraries of quite large towns³⁶.

Holland.—The new public library at the Hague was opened on November 16th, 1935. A description of the building shows it to be one of the best of the larger libraries opened since the war. The notice of the opening³⁷ states that in an illustrated booklet the librarian, Dr. H. E. Greve, sketches the 'thirty years' history of the library, and amongst other information says that the total stock, including that at the four branches, is over 144,000 volumes. The total issues were 678,238 in 1935 and the income 186,272 guilders. The C.V.O.L.B., the Dutch Public Library Association, is considering the inclusion in the existing regulations, of a clause making it possible for persons who change their place of residence in the course of a year to use the lending library in the new locality on production of a membership card from their former town. Forty-three libraries have agreed to co-operate in this way; one has declared against it and 38 have the matter under consideration³⁸.

A detailed consideration of library administration as it has been affected by the crisis makes some comparison with English libraries³⁹. Cyfer pointed out that the crisis is cultural as well as financial, and that active measures must be taken to influence public opinion. In every comparison made the position of the Dutch libraries is worse than that of similar towns in England. Other points raised were the need for stricter selection of books and the value of making a charge for the use of reading-rooms. In the discussions

³⁶ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 58-60.

³⁷ *BiGi.*, 15, 1936. pp. 59-63.

³⁸ *BiLev.*, 21, 1936. pp. 54-56.

³⁹ Cyfer, Mej. E. Eenige punten van leeszaalbleeid in crisistijd. *BiLev.*, 21, 1936. pp. 168-80.

one speaker said the experience at Rotterdam, where one guilder a year was charged, had shown that only 'undesirables' kept away from the library as a result.

Poland.—Once again the economic crisis comes up as the enemy of the popular library. In this country it is reported⁴⁰ that state allowances have been diminished: hence fewer books and periodicals, especially foreign, have been purchased.

Russia.—A good survey⁴¹ of libraries in the U.S.S.R. reveals the immense activity in this branch of education all over the Union.

Spain.—Most of the activities to be reported refer to 1935, and now, alas, but two years after, no doubt most of the plans, schemes and developments have been brought to a tragic stop. The library at Valencia, founded by Mme. Maria Moliner, acted not only as a popular urban library, but served as the central bureau for rural distribution⁴². At Avilés (Asturia) a library was built by public subscription. A small charge was made (one peseta a month) for adults and half this for children. Similar arrangements were in force at Torrelavega (Santander).

An illustrated article by Gosnell⁴³ gives a useful survey of the progress made during the last few years.

U.S.A.

Sharp⁴⁴ provides an interesting survey of what he saw and thought while in the United States. The comparisons he makes are certainly useful to his English colleagues and will no doubt be of interest to American librarians. Many libraries have suffered badly from damage during the extensive floods. This great disaster following on a time of forced economy has provided serious problems for many officials of the smaller libraries.

⁴⁰ I.F.L.A. Publications. 8, 1936. pp. 111-113.

⁴¹ Haygood, W. C. Libraries in the U.S.S.R. *L.J.*, 61, 1936. pp. 435-39.

⁴² I.F.L.A. Publications. 8, 1936. pp. 135-44.

⁴³ *L.J.*, 61, 1936. pp. 267-69.

⁴⁴ Sharp, H. A. Libraries and librarianship in America. xxiii; 191 pp. (Grafton, 1936. 7s. 6d.).

The annual conference of the A.L.A. at Richmond had one major theme—the extension and improvement of the library service in the U.S.A. generally and in the rural areas particularly⁴⁵. Various financial improvements are reported. In Ohio there was only one dissenting vote cast when the legislature passed a law appropriating \$100,000 for State aid⁴⁶. In Illinois the question of State aid has been considered favourably⁴⁷; and from other quarters comes news of successful fights for remission of federal taxes⁴⁸.

One of the most useful and interesting books of recent years is a detailed survey of the activities and organization of the Montclair Public Library, New Jersey. The joint authors⁴⁹, who are the Librarian and the President of the Board of Trustees respectively, have done the profession a service in publishing the result of their survey, which is by no means local in its value. As a picture of library work and as a guide to the efficiency of a library service, it will have a unique value to the public, to librarians and to committees until it is superseded by a similar work. Some indication of the difference in the scope of British and American libraries is given by the statement that 39 per cent of the annual budget is spent on popular reference and real research work.

One of the biggest problems awaiting American librarians, when the happy time comes in which they will be freed from the present financial difficulties, is the promotion of rural libraries. The problem is an immense one because of the immense size of the areas to be served. Meanwhile, a very important contribution to the problem has appeared⁵⁰. It is more than a report on what has been done, for the author has many valuable comments and suggestions to make. Tucker⁵¹ gives a useful composite picture of the salary

⁴⁵ *W.B.*, 10, 1936. pp. 644-47.

⁴⁶ *L.J.*, 61, 1936. p. 18.

⁴⁷ *Ibid.* pp. 301-306.

⁴⁸ *Ibid.* p. 3.

⁴⁹ Quigley, M. C. and Marcus, W. E. *Portrait of a library.* 90 pp. (Appleton-Century Co., 1936. 7s. 6d.).

⁵⁰ Barker, T. D. *Libraries in the South: a report on developments 1930-5.* xv, 215 pp. *A.L.A.* 1936. \$1.75.

status of librarians of cities with more than 200,000 population. The rapid rise of librarianship as a profession is well brought out in the course of the article.

Another valuable analysis comes from Carnovsky⁵². He proves that the important work of a library, so far as its distribution of books to adults is concerned, is limited to a very small element in the population. Continuing his examination of stock, he endeavours to ascertain the chances that a resident of the Chicago region would have of borrowing from a public library titles included in certain standard lists; what his chances of securing a reference service of a high order would be, and how he would fare if he wanted his children to read the best of recent literature for juniors. A searching survey: when every library committee directs an official to make a similar enquiry for the services under its control we shall indeed be at the beginning of a revolution in librarianship. Other indications of the vitality of the work in the U.S.A. are given by the record of activities with which reports and professional journals abound. One of the most interesting of these is the account of a successful exhibition held at the Minneapolis Public Library⁵³. Here the labour movement is strong; the librarian, therefore, promoted an exhibition called "Workers' Week," during which posters, books and printed publicity material were brought to the notice of visitors. The exhibition is believed to be the first of its kind in the U.S.A.

The library records of Texas have now appeared in accessible form⁵⁴. The publication will be a useful work of reference for many years to come.

CHINA

A heartening record of the great advance in library work in China comes from the Librarian of the National Library

⁵¹ Tucker, W. P. Salaries of librarians and other professional workers. *W.B.*, 11, 1936. pp. 179-82.

⁵² Carnovsky, Leon. Book collections, library expenditures and circulation. *L.Q.*, 6, 1936. pp. 34-73.

⁵³ *L.J.*, 61, 1936. pp. 87-89.

⁵⁴ Texas, L. A. Handbook of Texas Libraries, No. 4. pp. 151. Houston: *Texas L.A.*, 1935.

of Peiping⁵⁵. Here again it is to be hoped that the disturbances of the last year will not interfere with the movement which has made such big strides since 1930. The papers prepared on the occasion of the tenth annual conference of the *L.A.* of China were devoted to records of work in progress and the major problems of librarianship throughout the country. The useful institution of a National Book Week has spread to China too⁵⁶. Here all libraries participated with great success in a function which will be revived annually. Over 1,000 popular libraries are now identified with mass education in China; the tremendous possibilities of the work are realised by all library workers and educationalists, but strengthened efforts are imperative if the present rate of progress is to be increased.

⁵⁵ K. T. Wu. Library progress in China. *L.J.*, 61, 1936. pp. 950-53.
950-53.

⁵⁶ I.F.L.A. Publications. 8. 1936. pp. 125-29.

CHAPTER V

COUNTY AND RURAL LIBRARIES

By ELSIE COCKERLYNE, M.A., F.L.A., *Lancashire County Library*

GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND

THE most important events of the year have been the abolition of differential rating in three more county library systems, the West Riding of Yorkshire, Warwickshire and Herefordshire¹, and the issue of a memorandum by the County Libraries Section Committee defining new minimum standards of service². As some counties had already passed the standards of the memorandum of 1927, the time was opportune for a thorough revision. The present memorandum should remain authoritative for some time to come, though it is unlikely to be definitive. After discussing present defects it formulates as new standards a book stock of 75 per cent of the population, an expenditure of 5d. a head on books and 1½d. on binding and a minimum total expenditure of 1s. 7d. a head in a fully developed service. The 1937 recommendation of at least one assistant to every 10,000 volumes in stock is upheld, and one assistant, apart from the branch librarian, to every 5,000 population in branches is advocated. The memorandum also recommends the abolition of the voluntary system in all towns serving a population of more than 3,000 and the adoption of the flat rate principle where it would prove advantageous.

The short "County library statistics, 1935-36"³, show a further general improvement in service. 15 English, 4

¹ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 624-25, 160, 204.

² County Libraries Section Committee. Memorandum on county libraries. Prepared . . . for presentation to the County Libraries Section of the L.A., June, 1936. pp. 7.

³ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 578-79.

Welsh, 19 Scottish and 2 Irish counties have over 40 per cent of books ; 10 English counties now spend more than 6d. a head, compared with 6 in 1934-35. Branch library services are being rapidly developed, and many new and adapted buildings are announced⁴. Gloucester, Fife, Hereford and the North Riding of Yorkshire are to have new headquarters accommodation⁵, while Lanarkshire moved into new headquarters in May⁶. A development initiated during the year is the extension of museum service to rural areas. The Carnegie United Kingdom Trustees are prepared to assist in the establishment of two or three experimental schemes⁷ and suggest that it may be possible to use county library machinery for the distribution of exhibits. A scheme has already been prepared by the Derbyshire Education Committee for the organisation of a school museum circulating service, and the Trustees have offered a grant of £1,200 towards the purchase of equipment and specimens⁸. The Commission for Special Areas of South Wales and Monmouthshire made a grant of £10,000 for the purchase of books in the special areas⁹. It was made a condition that workmen's institutes and club libraries which benefited should become centres of the county library.

In a conference paper on the "Planning and lay-out of county library headquarters buildings" ¹⁰ R. Irwin makes a comprehensive survey of the problem. It is only possible to select points of interest here. In connection with the amount of accommodation required Mr. Irwin agrees that storage room is necessary for 50 per cent of the total book stock ten years hence ; a large county should therefore provide a stack-room for 250,000 books, covering about 10,000 square feet. Further, he thinks that only 50 per cent of the total headquarters area should be allotted

⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 75, 113-114, 163, 202, 206, 395-96, 534, 576, 623.

⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 75, 163, 205, 482.

⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 396.

⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 161-63.

⁸ *Ibid.*, pp. 203-4.

⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 576, 624.

¹⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 311-18.

to books, the other 50 per cent being devoted to administrative use. This gives a total headquarters area for a large county of 20,000 square feet. He decides that a reference room for the use of personal borrowers should be provided in all headquarters.

The debate still wages over the minimum population an autonomous authority should have. R. L. W. Collison is controversial: in his view in "Library service and the locality"¹¹, any town with over 20,000 population, which maintains cinemas and shops, can afford to maintain a library. Areas below 20,000 population and scattered villages are best, if inadequately, served by regional branches of a county library. J. G. O'Leary, on the other hand, summing up the London and Home Counties Branch Conference at Worthing¹², suggested that (1) the county should take over all towns up to 30,000 inhabitants and administer the library service, whether an independent service existed or not, (2) the county should be compelled to relinquish its powers for all places with more than 30,000 inhabitants.

The problem of new urban areas is discussed by Mr. O'Leary in "Library provision in new housing estates"¹³. He criticises Miss Powell's paper on the subject¹⁴ given at the C.U.K.T. County Library Conference in November, 1935, and contrasts his own very different experience at Dagenham. Miss Rait also dealt with this question at the Worthing Conference, from the county point of view, in "Library provision in new urban areas"¹⁵.

In "Town and country: past policies and future developments"¹⁶ Mr. Collison outlines the causes of the lack of understanding and sympathy between urban and county librarians. He suggests that (1) the County Libraries Section is unnecessary and contrary to the interests of county librarians, (2) the association of the county library with the

¹¹ *L.At.*, 29, 1936, pp. 97-99.

¹² *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 567-68.

¹³ *L. At.*, 29, 1936, pp. 139-44.

¹⁴ *Y.W.*, VIII, p. 65.

¹⁵ Summarized in *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 567-68.

¹⁶ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 593-96.

education committee is detrimental to the service. Mr. Collison also asserts that "the regional branch is perhaps the most important development in English librarianship in the last twenty years," and thinks that county librarians should concentrate on this form of service. M. C. Stanley-Smith describes the methods and lighter side of field work in "Personal contacts with rural readers"¹⁷. Finally, L. S. Jast continues his address to local librarians¹⁸ in "Serving our masters"¹⁹.

In Ireland a county library service has been established in Louth²⁰, and West Meath has decided to adopt the Libraries Acts²¹. Only Longford will still remain unserved.

C. A. Keogh's "Report on public library provision in the Irish Free State"²² contains much information about rural services. After sketching the early history and describing the 1913 conditions she surveys the present position in detail and gives full statistics for the year 1934-35. Although only West Meath and Longford are still unserved, the present county service, which has absorbed the greater number of the independent rural libraries, is merely a framework. Moreover, the majority of the towns outside the county health districts have no form of library provision; Miss Keogh considers that the solution lies in some form of co-operation with the county authority. The figures for 1934-35 reveal grave defects in the service. There are still four counties where the county librarian constitutes the whole staff, and eight counties with only one assistant. Inadequate book stocks are general; though the average is 23, individual counties provide only 7.04, 8.1 and 12.8 books per 100 population. Consequently, while the issues per 100 population average 141, in individual counties they fall as low as 33 and 48 per 100. Although the average

¹⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 369-72.

¹⁸ *Y.W.*, VIII, p. 67.

¹⁹ *L.R.*, 1936, pp. 219-23.

²⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 246-47.

²¹ *Ibid.*, p. 299.

²² Keogh, C. A. Report on public library provision in the Irish Free State, 1935. pp. 23, *tables*. 1936. Library Association of Ireland.

annual expenditure per head is 4.25d. there are libraries spending as little as $\frac{3}{4}$ d., 1 $\frac{1}{7}$ d., and 1 $\frac{5}{8}$ d. a head.

CZECHOSLOVAKIA

Information about the rural library service in Czechoslovakia is given in "County library notes"²³. Miss Beattie also summarises the 1919 library law and the supplementary instructions issued by the Minister of Education.

DENMARK

An account of the Danish public library system is given by M. K. Kristoffersen in "Danish public libraries"²⁴. The country is divided between 29 libraries (centralbiblioteker) which serve both the city and the region. The small town and rural libraries are dependent on these central libraries. The need for one central co-ordinating organisation has now become obvious. The changes made by the revision of the Danish library law in April, 1936, are briefly noted. Th. Dössing reports²⁵ that central libraries have been established at Aarhus and Assens. There are now central libraries in every province. An excellent guide, equipped with a name and subject index, with descriptions of the chief Danish libraries and a list of the small rural libraries, has been issued by the State Library Inspectorate²⁶.

GERMANY

The general survey made by W. Schuster in his report to the Comité International²⁷ contains the information that conferences were held in May, 1935, and 1936, by the *Reichsstelle für volkstümliches Büchereiwesen*, to consider the foundations for further work in the villages and small towns. Dr. Schuster also gives details of the development of the *Einkaufshaus für Büchereien* at Leipzig²⁸. Its basic

²³ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 73-74.

²⁴ *L.Y.*, 61, 1936, pp. 726-27.

²⁵ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 132-34.

²⁶ Larsen, Knud: *Dansk Bibliotekofører*. xix [1], 158 pp. København, 1936.

²⁷ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 117-118.

²⁸ See *Y.W.*, VIII, p. 69.

stock list is an "official list for village and small town libraries", and the stocks for these libraries are selected from it; libraries can, however, buy books which are not on the list.

Another account of the new popular-library system is given by F. Schriewer in "Warum staatliche Stellen für das Volksbüchereiwesen?"²⁹ In "Das deutsche Büchereiwesen im Bilde der Landschaft"³⁰ he paints a picture of the German library scene, which he finds dreary. In 36,000 communities with populations from 100-5,000 there are not more than 3,000 active libraries. Village libraries are most numerous and efficient in the east of Germany, where there are approximately 1,500, and in Schleswig-Holstein. Dr. Schriewer considers in detail the Brandenburg province, particularly the Frankfurt-Oder district. He evinces reasons for the scarcity of village libraries and concludes that the rural library will not survive without a close union with the small town library.

In "Das Zusammenwerken von Kreis, Gemeinde und staatlicher Büchereiberatungsstelle"³¹ Dr. Schriewer describes the organisation of the scheme which is now functioning in the Kreis Cottbus, in his own region, Frankfurt-Oder. As there was only the inefficient Cottbus travelling library a model experimental library was opened in Papitz in December, 1934; the basic stock of 100 volumes was supplied by the *Beratungsstelle* and the local community (Gemeinde) provided 100 Rm. for cupboards and 15 pf. a head each year for running expenses. This was so successful that it was decided to establish sixteen more libraries on the same terms. The agreement drawn up between the Kreis, the Gemeinde and the *Beratungsstelle*, which Dr. Schriewer gives, also decrees that the travelling library should be handed over to the *Beratungsstelle*, and that the Kreis should make a contribution to the upkeep of the libraries. The library is the property of the community; but if after five years the community has not given its share

²⁹ *Die B.*, 3, 1936, pp. 6-13.

³⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 545-61.

³¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 19-25.

towards the upkeep, the *Beratungsstelle*, with the consent of the Kreis, can take it away and establish it elsewhere.

An account of the first year's work of a village library in this district is given by the local librarian, in "Aus der Arbeit der Bücherei Jänschwalde, Kreis Cottbus"³². Fourteen per cent of the population of 850 are registered borrowers ; for this number a book stock of 115 seems hardly adequate.

"Was kann die Volksbücherei leisten?"³³ is a comparison by H. P. Johannsen between the libraries of Schleswig-Holstein and those in the Reich in places with less than 5,000 inhabitants. In the Schleswig-Holstein Grenzgebiet there are 123 village and 10 small town libraries which spend 15 pf. per head, as compared with the German average of 3 pf. per head. They are consequently more efficient, and obtain 19.9 per cent of the population as registered borrowers, compared with the German 4.51 per cent, 11.5 issues per reader compared with 7.14, and an "instructive works" percentage of 27.6 per cent from the village libraries alone.

A description of the work of the district and town library of Rastenburg (total population 19,000) in East Prussia is given in *Die Bücherei*³⁴. It is mainly an account of re-organisation consequent on the amalgamation of the town and travelling libraries in April, 1935 ; the immediate result was an increase of readers from .5 per cent to 5 per cent of the population in one year, and of issues from 7,068 to 20,700. The aim is to establish permanent libraries in the 78 villages in the district with a school. Towards this a yearly tax of 5 pf. a head has been approved ; with this income and the promised state support it will be possible to establish three or four new libraries a year. Meanwhile the travelling library has been strengthened and the provision of a car has made field work possible.

The village library was represented in the exhibition *Die deutsche Gemeinde*, organised in Berlin by the *Reichs-*

³² *Ibid.*, pp. 189-190.

³³ *Ibid.*, pp. 576-579.

³⁴ 3, 1936, pp. 416-18.

stelle für Volkstümliches Büchereiwesen, and the exhibit is described by G. Tschich in "Die deutsche Volksbücherei stellt aus"³⁵. A model village library was displayed, with an instruction-board describing its function and giving details of the capital and running costs in a place with 500 inhabitants ; Herr Tschich gives the figures in full.

INDIA

Accounts of several schemes for the provision of library facilities in rural areas are presented in the Report for 1935-36 of the Madras Library Association³⁶. In the Mannargudi travelling library service there are now 150 village centres ; the total stock is 6,308 books and the issues for the year were 24,384 volumes. The Kuppam district service is also noteworthy ; 39 centres are established in villages within a six mile radius of Kuppam, and the books are circulated from the Kuppam library by a van which carries 300 volumes. Another description of this service is given in "Rural library service centre, Kuppam (Andhra Desa)"³⁷. The Report also gives an outline of the scheme for rural libraries in the Travancore State, which was sanctioned by the government in December, 1935. During the first six months of the scheme, 60 rural libraries were opened in selected primary schools, with the headmaster as librarian³⁸.

The Report for 1934-35 of the *Baroda State Library Department* describes the organisation and work of the country branch and travelling library section. The country libraries serve over 60 per cent of the population of the state, and comprise four district, 42 town, 1,017 village libraries, and 216 reading-rooms in villages which cannot afford a library. 400 villages with a school still have no library, and a box of 50 books is being sent to each as a preliminary step to the establishment of a library. Government grants for maintenance, which are conditional on the community

³⁵ *Ibid.*, pp. 371-79.

³⁶ Madras L.A., 1936. See also Y.W., VII, pp. 39-40.

³⁷ *Indian Library Journal*, 4, 1936, pp. 22-24.

³⁸ *Modern Librarian*, 6, 1936, pp. 170-171.

raising an equal amount and on the administration of the library being efficient, are given according to the following maximum scale :—district libraries Rs. 700, town libraries Rs. 300, villages libraries Rs. 100. The district local board also contributes an equal amount. In addition the government and the district local boards make grants for buildings. The libraries are inspected by the staff of the *State Library Department*, and training classes are organised for village and town librarians. The Travelling Libraries Section circulated during the year 35,612 books to 11,053 readers ; the section now has a stock of 23,083 books. "The library movement in Charotar"³⁹ is a description of the various schemes of rural library service which have been organised in Baroda. A further account of the "History of libraries and the library movement in the Punjab" is given by S. R. Bhatia⁴⁰, and "How a district library works in Andhra Desa" is a description of the *Guntur District Central Library*⁴¹. The report of the first Unao District Library Conference includes a description of the *Hindi Sahitya Pustakalya* at Maurawan and its five year plan of development in the rural areas in the Unao district⁴².

Apart from the large degree of illiteracy which prevails, the main problems in these and other schemes are (1) insufficient books and newspapers, (2) the need for training the people in reading habits. Fiction is the most popular reading matter. Many of the rural schemes make a small charge for the loan of books for home reading.

NORWAY

The effect of the new library law passed in 1935 is described by J. Ansteinsson⁴³. The system of supervision of rural libraries has been extended to three new counties. Eight of the twenty-one counties (fylker) now have organised library inspection by government "library inspectors".

³⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 30-38.

⁴⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 87-95.

⁴¹ *Indian Library Journal*, 4, 1936, pp. 19-21.

⁴² *Ibid.*, pp. 12-14 ; *Modern Librarian*, 6, 1936, pp. 111-120.

⁴³ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 160-62. See also *Y.W.*, VIII, p. 74.

SPAIN

According to the report by H. Serís⁴⁴ 200 libraries have now been established by the Office de l'Échange international et de l'Acquisition de Livres, an increase of 40 on the previous year ; plans for the organisation of 100 additional libraries have been prepared. A central lending library is also being organised. Four hundred more village libraries have been established by the Missions pédagogiques, making a total of 5,400. The Missions have also helped with collections of books several private enterprises, notably the *Bibliothèque-École de Valence*, founded in October, 1935, by Mme. M. Moliner. This library serves both as the public library of the town and as the 'central' of a system of rural libraries.

In "New popular libraries in Spain"⁴⁵ C. F. Gosnell gives another account of the work done by the Junta de Intercambio y Adquisición de Libros para Bibliotecas Públicas in organising libraries in small towns and villages. Since June, 1932, 300 libraries have been organised ; a start has also been made with the organisation of a central lending library which is to act as a 'pool'. Mr. Gosnell gives an account of the mechanism of the system and describes some of the libraries.

SWEDEN

The organisation of central regional libraries in Sweden is making progress. The seventh was opened in Örebro in January, 1936, and the government has granted a subsidy for the establishment of another in 1937⁴⁶. Moreover, the diocesan library at Linköping has obtained an increased grant and now functions as the central library for the province of Östergötland.

SWITZERLAND

The effects of the economic depression are being severely felt in Switzerland. M. Godet reports⁴⁷, however, that

⁴⁴ *Ibid.*, pp. 135-44.

⁴⁵ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 267-69.

⁴⁶ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 164-66.

⁴⁷ *Ibid.*, pp. 167-69.

the *Bibliothèque pour Tous* has received some compensation for the diminished government grant in the special cantonal grants for books for the unemployed ; in 1935 fr. 4,000 was granted by the Canton of Berne and fr. 3,000 by the Canton of Zurich. According to the " 16me rapport sur l'année, 1935 " of the *Bibliothèque pour Tous*⁴⁸, the contributions of both cantons and communes to the library were less, and the question arises to what extent the *Bibliothèque* can continue to serve areas which do not pay for it. The figures for 1935 again show a slight decrease ; 2,023 boxes, containing 91,796 volumes, were sent out from the seven regional dépôts to 1,100 centres. On the other hand, the issue of technical and professional books to individual borrowers from the central dépôt at Berne increased from 7,734 to 8,064 volumes. The total stock of the *Bibliothèque pour Tous* is now 128,349.

U.S.A. AND CANADA

A significant expression of the trend towards a larger unit than the county for library service is given in the decision of the A.L.A. to change the name of the County Libraries Section to The County and Regional Libraries Section⁴⁹. The publication of T. D. Barker's " Libraries of the South " ⁵⁰ was an important event. Miss Barker was the A.L.A. regional field agent for the South during the five year period of an experiment in extension work financed by the Carnegie Corporation. Her book, which is both a report on the experiment and a survey of the library position in the South, includes chapters on the Rosenwald County Library demonstrations and other county and regional activities. 66 per cent of the population in the southern states are still without library service ; of these 19,500,000 are rural dwellers, as against 2,500,000 urban dwellers. The problem is, therefore, largely rural ; and Miss Barker concludes that the population and wealth of most counties

⁴⁸ Berne, 1936.

⁴⁹ *L. J.*, 61, 1936, p. 104 ; *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, p. 695.

⁵⁰ Barker, T. D. *Libraries of the South*. A report on developments, 1930-1935. xvi, 215 pp., *illus.*, 1936. *A.L.A.*

ent possible types of region and the place of the school in a regional scheme.

The "Biennial survey of libraries in Canada"⁵⁷ includes accounts, illustrated with maps, of both the Fraser Valley and the Prince Edward Island regional developments. The travelling and "open shelf" libraries are also described.

The report of the A.L.A. Library Extension Board for 1935, "Planning for state-wide nation-wide public library service"⁵⁸, includes an account of county and regional planning schemes initiated during the year. Regions composed of several counties acting co-operatively or of a trade or metropolitan area are the most common recommendation. Experiments in regional service are needed as a basis for future development. A similar account is provided by W. C. Haygood in "Library planning in the United States"⁵⁹. Among other projects for rural youth development, rural library service was recommended in the work programme issued by the NYA. In "Rural library service projects of the National Youth Administration"⁶⁰ G. W. Estes gives a report on actual and proposed projects, some of which are carried out under library supervision. Employment is given to rural youths by (1) placing them in established libraries, which are thus enabled to extend their services; (2) setting up library service in communities which have no public library. The chief problems are the provision of adequate book stocks and the selection of suitable workers.

The report of the Committee on the Content of the Training of County Librarians outlines a one-semester course in county and regional library work⁶¹.

⁵⁷ Canada. Dominion Bureau of Statistics. Biennial survey of libraries in Canada, 1935. Ottawa, 1936.

⁵⁸ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 336-41.

⁵⁹ *Ibid.*, pp. 138-46.

⁶⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 939-41.

⁶¹ *Ibid.*, p. 695.

CHAPTER VI

SCHOOL LIBRARIES

By MONICA CANT, F.L.A., *Librarian, Ladies' College, Cheltenham*

THE chapters on this subject in previous issues have been almost entirely concerned with individual contributions to the development of school libraries, as, except in the United States, any organised presentation of information has been lacking. Towards the end of 1933 the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust, with the approval of the Board of Education, took the first step towards making good this lack by setting up a Committee of Inquiry to prepare a Report¹ on the provision of libraries in secondary schools. The Committee's deliberations extended over two years and the Report was not published till early in 1936.

Before commenting on the contents of the Report it may be remarked that the impetus given by the proceedings of the Committee was such that, even before the publication of the Report, the Board of Education had instituted a summer course for school librarians, and that, very shortly after the issue of the Report, *The School Library Review* made its appearance. The Report received several lengthy notices² and all these expressed a sense of gratitude to the Trustees for initiating and financing the undertaking.

The Committee of Inquiry, itself a widely representative body, drew on every available source of information and received evidence from a number of witnesses who were able to speak with authority on special aspects of the problems before it. The result is as accurate a picture as it is possible to give of the present state of school libraries in Great Britain and Northern Ireland. That the picture

¹ Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. *Libraries in Secondary Schools*. 1936. pp. xvi, 85. illus.

² *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, April. pp. 173-74. *Times Educational Supplement*. February 15, 1936. p. 57. *Times Literary Supplement*. April 11, 1936. p. 320. *Journal of Education*. 68, 1936, April. pp. 221-22.

is not a pretty one is no fault of the Committee which has but recorded the facts brought to its notice. The most valuable part of the Report consists of the Committee's suggestions on the library provision that is desirable in schools of various sizes. These suggestions are an attempt to arrive at some sort of standard, though the Committee repeatedly points out that the suggestions are offered only as a guide and that any rigid adherence to them would be deplored. In the library more than any other department it is essential that each school should develop a system suited to its own needs. The subjects dealt with in the Report include accommodation and equipment, the school library staff, selection, supply and maintenance of the book stock, organisation and use of the library, co-operation with other libraries, subsidiary libraries, and an appendix on the position of school librarians in regard to pension. The Report concludes with the recommendation that a small Standing Committee should be set up to act as a co-ordinating body in the interests of school libraries, and this recommendation has since been implemented by the Trustees. Communications to the Committee should be addressed to : The Secretary, Secondary School Libraries Committee, Board of Education, Whitehall, London, S.W.1.

The second notable development which comes within the two years (1935-6) under review was the establishment by the Board of Education in 1935 of a short course in the Organisation of School Libraries. This addition to the Board's usual summer school programme proved so successful that it was repeated in 1936. *The Times Educational Supplement*, August 24, 1935, gave the impressions of a correspondent who attended that year. This writer fully appreciates the value of bringing together teacher-librarians, for in the librarian he rightly sees "the key to the situation."

Something of the same sort was in the mind of at least one member of the Carnegie Committee of Inquiry who realised that a medium for the exchange of ideas was needed. In the Spring term of 1936 the first number of *The School*

*Library Review*³ appeared. Its purpose is to encourage the exchange of experiences between school librarians and the discussion of varieties of methods in organisation and routine suitable for school libraries. In connection with the Review panels of specialists have been set up who are at work compiling basic lists of books suitable for school libraries. The production of such lists should be of the greatest value in building up representative collections. Other topics which have received attention are the encouragement of reading; pupil assistants; the Decimal and the Library of Congress classification schemes; subsidiary libraries; accounts of libraries in a rural school, a day school, and a public school of ancient foundation; fiction; and books on careers. Well-known and long-established journals were very kind in the welcome they accorded the newcomer, particularly the *Times Educational Supplement* in the article on the front page of its issue of April 18th, 1936.

By the middle of June another aid to school librarians, in the form of a handy textbook, was available. Miss Cant's book⁴ is, indeed, so important that it should be studied by all who are concerned with the building up or management of a school library. In addition to chapters on the planning and equipment of a library, on the basic stock and the acquisition of books, Miss Cant describes very clearly the business of classification and of cataloguing, and gives sound guidance on the issue and recall of books and practical suggestions on binding. She has very useful chapters on the Library Committee and on co-operation within the school, and on various supplementary services. [Ed.]

During 1936 two meetings of those interested in school libraries were held to discuss the banding together of school librarians into an organised body. Opinion was divided on the possible alternatives. These were a separate society

³ *The School Library Review*, ed. by Paule de Lépervanche, The Old Cottage, Sharnbrook, Bedfordshire. 3 issues a year. 5s. Free to members of the School Libraries Section of the L.A.

⁴ Cant, Monica. *School and College Library Practice*. 144 pp., illus. Allen and Unwin. 1936. 5s.

or a special section of the L.A. which could come into being only by a decision of the Council of that Association. At its December meeting the Council resolved to form a School Libraries Section, thereby offering to teacher-librarians the opportunity of alliance with the main body of librarians. Those who had been in favour of a separate society did not admit this to be an advantage, but the further history of this matter must be held over to the volume dealing with the events of 1937.

One publication which appeared during 1936, though not specifically designed to aid school librarians, should yet be very welcome to them. This is the revised edition of the L.A.'s classified and annotated guide to book selection for adolescent readers, published under the title "Books for Youth."⁵

Among the articles which have appeared in English periodicals, the following are selected for mention: two useful discussions on the position, duties and training of the teacher-librarian⁶ and two accounts of Public Library collaboration with schools⁷. In Halifax, a joint scheme has been in operation for twenty-five years. In Edinburgh, three types of school centres are now established: general collections for the use of the whole school, separate collections for each class, and school branch libraries. The school branch libraries have been found to be a workable solution of the problem of library provision in the new housing areas of the city. They have a public as well as a school entrance and are open to the general public at different hours from those assigned for the admission of school pupils.

In the United States, the professional training of teacher-librarians has been engaging much attention. Miss Fargo, who has been Head of a library school devoted to the pre-

⁵ L.A. Books for Youth; ed. by W. C. Berwick Sayers. L.A. 1936. pp. xx, 364. 10s. To members 9s.

⁶ *Journal of Education*. Vol. 67, 1935, Aug. pp. 532-33 and Oct. pp. 652-53.

⁷ Green, E. Schools and Libraries. *Times Educational Supplement*. June 16, 1934.

Butchart, R. School Libraries in Edinburgh. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, Aug. pp. 410-13.

paration of librarians for educational positions and who has since spent two years researching on the problem, has brought out a full-length study⁸ on the kind and degree of training for school librarianship, both as it is and as it might be. Specially interesting are her suggestions for a revised programme which she thinks should differentiate far more sharply than has been usual between full professional preparation, short courses for teachers, and semi-professional preparation for teachers. This last she evidently considers is the need of the moment and she has prepared a "curriculum such as might be put into operation by a teacher-preparing agency wishing to offer its students something less than full professional library education."

Miss Fargo has also had much to do with the report⁹ of the Joint Committee of the American Association of Teachers' Colleges and the A.L.A. on this subject. The Joint Committee did not begin work till Miss Fargo had written the greater portion of her book, so that the two publications are independent if inter-related. The Joint Committee gives detailed recommendations for non-professional introductory courses for teachers in the use of libraries, and semi-professional courses designed for teachers preparing for part-time service as librarians in secondary or elementary schools.

Another important contribution to this subject is an article by the Librarian of the Enoch Pratt Free Library, Baltimore¹⁰, who believes that, with one or two exceptions, "the integration of library services with teaching is hardly being touched."

To the *L.Q.*, Miss E. M. Witmer contributes the results of an investigation¹¹ into research studies in connection

⁸ Fargo, Lucile F. *Preparation for School Library Work*. (Columbia University Studies in Library Service. iii). New York, Columbia University Press. 1936. viii, 190 pp. 15s.

⁹ How shall we educate Teachers and Librarians for Library Service? New York, Columbia University Press. Milford. 1936. 74 pp. 5s.

¹⁰ Wheeler, Joseph L. *Thoughts on the Preparation of School Librarians*. *L.J.*, 60, 1936, March 15. pp. 242-45.

¹¹ Witmer, Eleanor M. *School Library Studies and Research*. *L.Q.* 6, 1936, Oct. pp. 382-404.

with the school library. She suggests ten areas which offer problems suitable for research, and gives, for the benefit of those who are considering undertaking a specialised study, a list of theses which have already been prepared.

In the United States, the problem of the small school which cannot afford an adequate library is as marked as in our own country. One successful attempt to meet it by a centralised plan worked by three high schools is described by the Library Director, Johnson County School System, Kentucky¹². The plan consists of what the author describes as "exaggerated inter-library loan with systematic and continuous circulation."

Another form of experiment in co-ordination has been undertaken in the city of Los Angeles¹³, where the cataloguing activities of all the senior and junior high schools have been combined under one supervisor.

Contributions to the literature on school libraries from the continent are comparatively rare, so it is the more interesting to read a detailed account by Mme. Claire Suran-Mabire¹⁴ of the difficulties she met in running form libraries in a large Lycée at Marseille-Montgrand.

Over and above the labour of choosing, buying, and issuing the books, the libraries were constantly having to be moved when the form rooms were changed. The twenty-fourth year of struggle was one of "general post" and has wrung from her this cry from the heart, not only on her own behalf but on that of her colleagues in other schools who have been trying to shoulder the same burden. Her solution is a centralised library maintained by subscriptions from the parents of pupils, the funds providing both books and a salary for the librarian. When there is little or nothing to pay in school fees, subscriptions may be necessary but it is not a solution which appeals to an English mind.

¹² Jesse, William H. A Centralised Plan. *L.J.*, 61, 1936, Nov. 1. p. 840.

¹³ Thorne, Florence B. Co-ordination of Cataloging in a large City School System. *W.B.*, March, 1935. pp. 361-62 and 389.

¹⁴ Suran-Mabire, Claire. Pour un nouvel aménagement des Bibliothèques Scolaires. *Revue Universitaire*, 45, 1936, March. pp. 245-49.

CHAPTER VII

CHILDREN'S LIBRARIES

By EILEEN H. COLWELL, F.L.A., *Children's Librarian,
Hendon Public Library*

THE quality of work done with children in English and American libraries is constantly improving, but a decrease in issues seems common to both countries. A scrutiny of the annual reports for 1936 suggests various reasons for this, amongst them the lower birth rate with the resultant decline in school population. More adequate provision of school libraries often means a corresponding drop in the issues of the children's library, and the traffic danger is also a factor. Modern life offers a host of counter-attractions to reading, and in the cities the population tends to move out to suburbs, thus altering the clientèle of the city libraries. Westminster Public Library reports that "In less than ten years the use made of the children's room has been halved¹." It is therefore proposed that no further provision shall be made for the children.

There is a general tendency towards the removal of restrictions², especially the charging of fines. About forty English libraries were circularised on this question by St. Marylebone Library, and it was discovered that seven of these had ceased to charge fines, while others had reduced the scale of charges.

In England work with children goes on apace. It is now acknowledged that not only is such work an essential part of a successful library system, but that the minimum is a separate room, an adequate stock and suitable furniture. The new children's departments opened during 1936 reflect this policy. They are planned for their specific

¹ Report of the Public Library Committee, 1935-36, Westminster.

² Luke, A. B. Some aspects of library work with children. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 513-19.

purpose, and many are fitted with the latest accessories such as a radiogram and an epidiascope. The St. Pancras Children's Corner is an attractive example of a modern children's library. The lending and reference rooms are separate, but can be converted into a lecture hall by the folding back of screens and book stacks. Gainsborough Branch (Ipswich) and Golders Green Branch (Hendon) also utilise their children's room for lectures and Story Hours.

Several new libraries have mural decorations, notably Scarborough, Dewsbury and Kensal Rise (Willesden). The latter is a pleasant children's room with an informal atmosphere, and the mural decorations from "Alice in Wonderland" and "Treasure Island" are especially attractive. But one wonders whether the permanency of such decorations is not rather a drawback, for children delight in change. New children's libraries have also been provided at Chesterfield, Devonshire Hill (Tottenham), Upton (Birkenhead), Brightmet (Bolton) and North Finchley.

1936 has brought two new-comers to the twenty-five or so bulletins produced for children. *Treasureland* (Fulham) is competently written and does not neglect the only aim of such publications, which is to encourage the reading of the better books. *The Open Door* (Dunfermline) is written largely by the children themselves, a list of recent additions being added.

That the general interest in work with children is increasing is shown by several significant facts. At the 1936 Conference of the L.A. a session was devoted to such aspects of children's library work as the classification of books³, methods of co-operation with schools⁴, and the problem of making the best books attractive to young people⁵. A Circle of Library Workers with Children is in existence, and a new quarterly publication *The Junior*

³ Hayler, E. G. The best arrangement of books in the Junior Library. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 363-64.

⁴ Corbett, P. T. M. Co-operation between schools and libraries. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 360-62.

⁵ Watt-Smith, L. M. Making the unpopular book attractive. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 364-68.

Bookshelf has appeared in which children's books only are reviewed. The *Library Association* has decided to make an annual award of a medal (to commemorate the centenary of Andrew Carnegie) for the best children's book published in the British Empire. This is to be voted for by children's librarians. The medal for 1936 has been awarded to Arthur Ransome for his book "Pigeon Post."

Views on children's tastes in reading vary almost as much as the children themselves. F. Seymour Smith emphasises the child's demand for "absolute reality and fidelity to the world around him"⁶; another librarian claims that children are given books which are beyond their "reading age"⁷; yet another demands that reading "should be a stimulant and not 'a drug.'"⁸ In an article on "The Modern Style of Format of Children's Books",⁹ Miss F. M. Wileman voices the preferences of young people in that direction.

A new and completely revised edition of "Books for Youth" has appeared under the editorship of W. C. Berwick Sayers¹⁰.

Children's library work in America is more centralised than in England, and during the year a new division has been formed at the A.L.A. headquarters to co-ordinate the activities of workers with children throughout the country. In connection with this an International Committee is arranging a series of articles on work with children in other parts of the world. A general résumé of the "Youth Movement" in American libraries is given in Mr. Sharp's book on "Libraries and Librarianship in America",¹¹ pages 109-129.

Extension work is always a feature in America, and at

⁶ Smith, F. Seymour. The child and his books. Publisher's Circular, 145, 1936, pp. 361-62.

⁷ Tomlinson, N. L. W. The approach to books. *L.W.*, 25, 1936, pp. 83-84.

⁸ Stern, Constance M. The reading interests of children. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 243-45.

⁹ *L.W.*, 25, 1936, pp. 63-64; 87-88.

¹⁰ Sayers, W. C. Berwick. Books for youth. xix, 364 pp. *L.A.*, 1936.

¹¹ Sharp, Henry A. Libraries and librarianship in America. xxiii, 191 pp., Grafton, 1936.

Youngstown, Ohio, a 'Mothers' Institute¹², planned to help mothers to instil the love of reading in their children at an early age, has been inaugurated. This is an effort to cater for the pre-school child and to ensure interested future borrowers. An attempt to provide for adolescents has been made in the Aguilar Branch, New York, where there is a "Browsing room¹³" for older boys and girls, and in the Boys' Brotherhood Republic¹⁴, in the same city, which includes a library run entirely by the boy citizens.

A series of articles by American children's librarians on "The Future of Library Work with Children¹⁵", emphasises the low standard in children's library work in the past. The children's department is becoming an integral part of the library service. Increasing attention is being paid to the pre-school child and to child-psychology, and the cinema and the radio have a growing influence on the reading of young people. In the future, work may be carried on in a small number of separate regional libraries, supplemented by a chain of jointly-operated school libraries.

Three American publications have been revised this year, the first a "Graded List of Books for Children" prepared by the A.L.A.¹⁶; the second the "Children's Catalog" compiled by Siri Andrews¹⁷; the third, Marie L. Shedlock's "The Art of the Story-teller¹⁸."

Reports of the work in Holland come through Miss Phyllis T. M. Corbett¹⁹ who was invited to visit some of the Dutch children's libraries. Library work with children in Holland seems to be of a more educational type than our

¹² *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 314-15.

¹³ Cam, Hester H. A social approach to adolescence. *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 401-02.

¹⁴ *W.B.*, 10, 1936, pp. 379-81.

¹⁵ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 817-20, 919-23; 62, 1937, pp. 17-21.

¹⁶ Graded list of books for children. ix, 161 pp., Chicago, A.L.A., 1936.

¹⁷ Andrews, Siri. Children's catalog. 5th ed., vii, 979 pp., N.Y., H. W. Wilson Co., 1936.

¹⁸ Appleton, 1936.

¹⁹ Corbett, Phyllis T. M. A short comparison between English and Dutch library work with children. *L.W.*, 25, 1936, pp. 111-14.

Fortman, L. de Gaay. Een Engelsche collega in den Haag. *BiLev.*, 21, 1936, pp. 219-220.

own, although there is no co-operation with schools. A charge for membership is made even to children. Books are graded and there is considerable supervision of children's reading, access to the shelves not being allowed in the lending libraries.

In Finland in the remarkable new library at Viipuri²⁰, there is a children's department of interest. The lending library and the reference rooms are on different levels, stools are provided instead of chairs, and the children have a separate entrance from their own lawn.

An interesting article in *Die Bücherei*²¹ gives an insight into the attitude of Germany towards library work with children. The children's library is considered part of the educational system, it is linked up with the various "Youth" movements, and the reading of the boys and girls is closely supervised. Certain types of books are 'weeded-out'—the list is of great interest—and replaced by books selected to give results of a specific type. This arbitrary book-selection may cause dissatisfaction, but this is all to the good, for "Der Krieg ist der Vater aller Dinge."

To conclude. The standard of work with children is improving year by year, but there is still need of more adequate funds for this work and a better-trained personnel. The time has come for investigation and analysis of children's reading, and for a wider conception of work with children.

²⁰ Carter, E. J. The Viipuri library, Finland. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 415-18.

²¹ Graebisch, Irene. Jugendbücherei und Kinderleseshalle. *Die B.*, July, 1936, pp. 357-66.

CHAPTER VIII

LIBRARY CO-OPERATION

By JANET TOMBLIN, F.L.A., *Editor, South-Eastern Regional Library System, National Central Library*

WITH the present almost universal acceptance of the principle of co-operation, its literature is rapidly ceasing to be controversial and most of the material published in 1936 concerns the expansion of existing schemes, plans for new ones, and the technique of organisation. A most important bibliography of union catalogues has appeared and gone into two editions¹. The list contains over 350 items on union catalogues all over the world and is indispensable to all who are interested in the subject. It is perhaps a pity that the text is mimeographed : it is far more worthy of print than many books and it is to be hoped that this dignity will be given to the next edition.

Practical methods of compiling union catalogues are discussed by Donald Coney in "The Union Catalogue : its future ; a report to the Washington Conference on Union Catalogues²," who advocates the use of microphotography and the WPA, and J. R. Russell gives a general survey of union catalogue activities in Europe in "The co-operative catalogue in Europe³."

NATIONAL

GREAT BRITAIN

B. M. Headicar⁴ emphasises the importance of co-operation in the library development of England and makes the

¹ Berthold (Arthur). *Union catalogues : a selective bibliography.* xii, [4], 70 pp. *Union Library Catalogue of the Philadelphia Metropolitan area.* 1936.

² *A.L.A. Bull.* 30, 1936. pp. 541-45, and see footnote 36.

³ *A.L.A. Bull.* 30, 1936. pp. 673-74.

⁴ Headicar (B. M.). *The Library of the Future.* Allen and Unwin, 1936. *Practical Library Handbooks.*

interesting, if controversial, suggestion that inspection by a State commission might do much to persuade public libraries to join their regional systems. A more detailed review of existing schemes is given in chapter 19 of his "Manual⁵," where he affirms that co-operation forms the basis of all library development.

L. Newcombe, in a paper read at the 13th Annual Conference of ASLIB⁶, has provided an extremely useful account of the work carried on in the Regional Systems and at the N.C.L. in union cataloguing. He emphasises the fact that proof of the value of union catalogues can be found in the startling lack of duplication of entries, and quotes the high percentages of unique copies that have been found by analysis to be contained in most of the Regional Systems' catalogues.

R. L. W. Collison in "The library service and the locality"⁷ argues that regional systems and the N.C.L. provide sufficient co-operation to enable the small growing municipalities to adopt autonomous powers and obtain the benefits of an individual service at an early stage, and that such authorities would best serve their communities by coming out of the county systems sooner than many of them do.

Central cataloguing has received a certain amount of attention, culminating in Sir E. Graham-Little's question in the House of Commons on November 11th⁸ concerning the provision of cards by the British Museum on the model of those of the Library of Congress. Reply was made that such a service was not practicable.

THE NATIONAL CENTRAL LIBRARY

As this volume of the *Year's Work* is to be published considerably earlier than its predecessors, the Annual

⁵ Headicar (B. M.). *Manual of Library Organization*. L.A., 1935. Chapter 19. County libraries. Regional libraries. pp. 237-51.

⁶ Newcombe (L.). Union catalogues, national and regional: their preparation and utilisation. *ASLIB. Report of 13th Conference*, 1936. pp. 65-76.

⁷ *L.At.* April, 1936. pp. 97-99.

⁸ *L.A.R.* Dec. 1936. p. 626.

Report of the N.C.L. for the year under consideration has not appeared at the time of writing. The information available is not, therefore, quite as full as usual, although many details have very kindly been made accessible to the writer.

The issues show a slight increase over those for last year, which are given in round brackets.

Books issued to libraries	38,367	(36,142)
„ „ „ adult classes	12,042	(11,217)
<hr/>		
Total	50,409	(47,359)

This increase reflects the larger number of applications reported from all regional systems and is a satisfactory sign of the success of regionalisation. That the Systems are relieving the N.C.L., in a steadily growing proportion, of more and more of those books for which it should be unnecessary to call upon a central library is clear from the fact that the regions report still larger increases. The figures quoted throughout this section are significant of the steady growth of inter-lending throughout the country.

Outlier libraries.—The number of outlier libraries has increased by 8 to 166. They have lent 12,042 books, 2,040 more than last year.

University libraries.—2,956 books were lent to 63 libraries, against 2,506 to 53 last year. The libraries themselves lent 1,345, against 1,228.

Foreign libraries.—Inter-lending shows a steady annual increase. 357 books were lent by British libraries to foreign libraries in 14 different countries (1935, 302; 1934, 239), and 145 were borrowed by British libraries from libraries in 19 different countries (1935, 104; 1934, 82).

Union catalogues.—The union catalogues are all growing satisfactorily and work is proceeding steadily on the national union catalogue. Copies of their catalogues supplied by four regional systems are sorted into one alphabetic sequence to make this, and about 200,000 slips have been dealt with up to the present.

The suggestion has been made by Miss M. Gilbert⁹ that the N.C.L. should add to its services by becoming a store-house for old novels, famous in their day, but now taking up too much valuable space on public library shelves.

R. Ofor, in the "University Grants Committee : Report for the period 1929-30 to 1934-5"¹⁰, notes the Committee's regret that the use made of the N.C.L. by university libraries and the help given it are not more extensive.

REGIONAL SYSTEMS AND OTHER CO-OPERATIVE WORK IN ENGLAND AND WALES

Information on regional systems is given in most of the footnotes above, particularly 1, 5 and 6. A résumé of the regional library movement was given by Miss C. C. Adams in a paper on "Co-operation" read at a week-end conference of the Midland and Northern Branches of the Library Association, in which she suggests supplementing the author by a class catalogue in order to be able to answer subject enquiries, and a general survey is made by W. Tipping in "Regional co-operation"¹¹.

The National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation met three times during the year and was naturally much occupied with the problem of making provision for the additional subscription of £2,000 to the N.C.L. required by the Treasury condition for continuing its grant-in-aid after March, 1938¹². The amount required from each region was allocated and a national scale of subscriptions drawn up, which was in due course submitted for consideration to all the systems. An important step was taken in the adoption of a sub-committee's report, urging the desirability of a union catalogue for every regional system and of a national union catalogue for the N.C.L.

As in the case of the N.C.L., the reports of the various regional systems are not published at the time of writing, but the honorary secretaries of the systems have very kindly

⁹ *L.A.R.* June, 1936. p. 251.

¹⁰ *Ibid.* May, 1936. pp. 191-92.

¹¹ *Manchester Librarian*, April, 1936. pp. 49-55.

¹² *Y.W.* VIII, p. 92.

provided information. All report substantial increases in issues and most of them have undertaken analyses of portions of their union catalogues for the purpose of discovering the amount of duplication of entries¹³. The increase in issues seems to mark increased library activity all over the country and finally establishes the success of the principle of regionalisation: the analyses reveal astonishingly high percentages of unique copies in libraries of which the majority are of a general type and establish the value of union cataloguing. The whole country is now covered by these organisations, for the *South-Western* System is now established with headquarters at Bristol and hopes to start inter-lending in April, 1937. There are at present 43 co-operating libraries, including most of those in the Cornish system, which will be absorbed by the new one; a grant has been received from the Carnegie Trustees, staff appointed, and work on the Union Catalogue will commence in April, 1937. This will be compiled along the same lines as those first evolved by the South-Eastern System and now in use in most of the younger bureaux.

Good progress is reported from the *Northern* System¹⁴, where the Union Catalogue, comprising about 312,000 entries, will be finally completed in the spring of 1937, and a record of 2,347 issues has been made from the Region, 249 more than last year. An analysis of a portion of the catalogue revealed that no less than 70 per cent. of the books were in one library only. Financial considerations have presented some grave problems and the System, although able to establish itself on a permanent basis from subscriptions, after the expiry of the Carnegie Grant, cannot accept the national scale required for the fulfilment of the Treasury condition. In this connection, the suggestion is made that the monetary value of the copy of the Union Catalogue supplied to the N.C.L. should be taken into consideration. The *South-Eastern* System is also con-

¹³ See footnote 6.

¹⁴ Northern Regional Library System. 6th Annual Report, 1936. pp. 8. Newcastle-upon-Tyne, 1937.

sidering its permanent financial arrangements, as its grant from the Carnegie Trustees expires at the end of 1937, and is hoping to increase its subscription to the N.C.L. The union catalogue numbers about 115,000 entries, but sorting is finished and the entries should be completed by the end of 1937. A record number of applications has been received and a record issue made, and all libraries but one have both lent and borrowed. The *East Midlands* System is in the fashion with an issue of 2,489 more books than last year—the year's total being 3,220. Three more libraries have joined and the Union Catalogue, now comprising about 49,000 entries, is making steady progress. The analysis of duplication gives 53.95 per cent. in one library only. The increase in the *West Midlands* System is 15.5 per cent. in issues (5,814 issues in 11 months), and the number of volumes lent by other libraries than Birmingham has increased by 20.7 per cent. Birmingham is naturally still the biggest lender, as, by reason of its size and position, it is bound to be, but the growth of this percentage shows a more satisfactory distribution of lending. There is also an increase of 24.2 per cent in the issues through the N.C.L. to other libraries in the country. The *Yorkshire* System will conclude its two years' experimental period in March, 1937, and will then have to decide whether the operation of a Bureau without a union catalogue is sufficiently satisfactory to be made permanent. An interesting time-analysis has been prepared, which gives 3,348 days as the average time taken from the date of application to the date of despatch of the book from a zone centre. Comparison would be very interesting, if it were possible, with similar analyses from regional systems where union catalogues are used. The *Wales and Monmouthshire* System also reports good progress, 50.9 per cent. of the applications, which are up by about 300, having been supplied from the Region. The Union Catalogue totals some 573,000 entries, of which a sectional analysis gives 84.4 per cent. as unique, and a certain portion is now typed in its final form. The *North-Western* System has taken an important step in limiting

the scope of the union catalogue. It was found that the Carnegie grant would be insufficient to cover the cost of compiling a complete union catalogue and it was therefore decided to include entries for only the reference stocks of the co-operating libraries and to rely upon requisition lists, circulated twice weekly, for loans from the lending departments. Five more libraries have joined this System, making a total of seventy-nine, and the subscription to the N.C.L. is to be increased.

*The London Public Libraries Union Catalogue*¹⁵ is making excellent progress, although three libraries still remain outside, and a total of 1,328,140 slips has now been incorporated. A flourishing inter-lending scheme is in operation and has received 7,753 applications, 1,488 more than last year, of which almost two-thirds were satisfied by the metropolitan libraries. An analysis of entries for letter A reveals the usual high percentage of unique copies—50 per cent. in this case. It seems unfortunate that an organisation with so active an inter-lending scheme and so valuable a catalogue should remain outside the chain of regional systems and it is to be hoped that the time is not far off when the metropolitan libraries will lend to libraries outside their own area as freely as their provincial brothers do.

UNIVERSITIES

*The Union Catalogue of Periodicals in University Libraries of the British Isles*¹⁶, supplementary to the World List, is now actually in the press and should appear in the summer of 1937. It contains over 22,000 main entries for 110 university libraries and each entry is followed by a location list. Both as a finding list and as a bibliographical tool it will be invaluable and the inclusion of scientific periodicals which ceased publication before 1900 (outside the scope of the World List) will make it useful to purely scientific as well as humanistic libraries.

¹⁵ *L.A.R.* Feb., 1937, pp. 66-67; May, 1936, p. 198.

¹⁶ *L.A.R.* May, 1936, pp. 198-99.

Oxford.—The Inter-Collegiate Catalogue of Early Printed Books has not yet appeared.

Cambridge.—Mr. H. M. Adams has completed entries for 4 libraries and has half finished another in his Union Catalogue of 16th century foreign books in the college libraries. He anticipates that the complete catalogue will contain about 30,000 entries.

SCOTLAND

The Scottish Central Library for Students has a slightly decreased issue—14,585 compared with 15,399 last year. No further developments have taken place towards the legal amendments necessary for the establishment of regional systems.

IRELAND (Northern and Free State)

The Belfast Public Library continues to act as a centre for inter-lending in Northern Ireland and has lent 116 books during the year, 160 less than last year. The Irish Central Library for Students has an almost identical issue with that for 1935—14,206 opposed to 14,233. At a conference of the Library Association of Ireland in June, 1935, Miss C. A. Keogh read a paper on "A national library service,"¹⁷ putting forward a strong plea for the establishment of a national lending library and systems of co-operation.

BRITISH EMPIRE

India.—The Indian Library Association is compiling a catalogue of scientific periodicals available in important libraries in India. It has also evolved a scheme for inter-lending of books¹⁸.

New Zealand.—At their first conference, the four university librarians arranged a system of inter-lending, providing also for the exchange of information about periodicals and special material¹⁹.

¹⁷ *An Leabharlann*, Dec., 1935, pp. 50-56.

¹⁸ *I.F.L.A. Publications* 8. 1936. p. 153.

¹⁹ *L.A.R.* Dec., 1936, p. 599.

South Africa.—Efforts are being made, under the leadership of Dr. J. C. Albertyn, towards the establishment of a central medical library²⁰. P. Freer, in "Some library objectives for South Africa,"²¹ urges the economy of co-operative buying, particularly of periodicals, and advocates central cataloguing from a copyright library by means of the A. B. Dick Library Card mimeograph.

EUROPE

Belgium.—An anonymous author, "G. S.," has some serious criticisms to make in his "Bedenkingen bij de uitgave van den Index des publications périodiques existant dans les bibliothèques de Belgique et du Grand-Duché de Luxembourg²²" (noticed in *Y. W.* Vol. VIII). The Index is apparently far from complete, particularly as regards the Antwerp Public Library and the author attributes this to the general lack of public recognition of libraries in Belgium.

Denmark.—The Statens Bibliotekstilsyn is responsible for a useful publication on the Danish library movement²³, which includes an account of its own activities and of the Danish Centre for Documentation. An interesting survey of co-operation is included in M. K. Kristoffersen's "Danish public libraries²⁴".

Finland.—The future of the "Catalogue général d'acquisitions des bibliothèques scientifiques de Finlande" has been safeguarded by a government grant²⁵.

France.—Hope has been expressed for the formation in France of regional systems, with a National Central Library, as in England²⁶. L. Bultingaire²⁷ looks forward to a time when the catalogue of the Bibliothèque Nationale will be

²⁰ *S. African Libraries*, Jan., 1936. p. 95.

²¹ *Ibid.*, April, 1936, pp. 135-143.

²² *Bibliotheksgids*, 15, pp. 25-30.

²³ Larsen (Knud). *Dansk Biblioteksfører. Statens Bibliotekstilsyn Publikationer*. 13. 1936. [xx], 158 pp.

²⁴ *L. J.* Oct., 1936, pp. 726-27.

²⁵ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8. 1936. p. 145.

²⁶ *R. du L. et d. B.* Jan.-March, 1936.

²⁷ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8. 1936. pp. 147-9.

augmented by entries for books in other Parisian libraries and when a union catalogue of periodicals in Paris libraries will be undertaken.

Germany.—Vol. 9, B-Bailey, of the "Deutscher Gesamtkatalog," the first under the new régime, appeared during the year. The catalogue now includes 94 German and 8 Austrian libraries and is still compiled on the same lines, no literature that appeared after 1929 being included. The work is lessened for the small libraries by the systematic distribution of proofs, to which they affix their key numbers. The new volume contains 12,415 titles, of which no less than 4,516 are recorded as being in one library only. Comparison of various entries shows that the Prussian content alone usually exceeds that of the Bibliothèque Nationale and that of the British Museum, which gives some idea of the extent of this great national catalogue. Good general accounts of the new G.K. are given by H. Fuchs in "Der deutsche Gesamtkatalog"²⁸, and by R. Fick in "Deutscher Gesamtkatalog"²⁹.

Holland.—At a general meeting of the Dutch Union of Librarians on May 28th³⁰, Herr Cohen reported on the scheme of co-operation in Northern Holland. Mutual arrangements concerning book-purchase, etc., are working excellently and a union catalogue—*Catalogus Samenwerkende Leeszalen*—has been started, for location purposes. Another meeting was held in November³¹, at which it was decided to set up an advisory bureau for book-selection and the co-operative reading of periodicals and to form a committee to encourage the exchange of study books. It is hoped thus to encourage libraries to specialize. I. A. Korevaar in "Inventariis van technische en natuurwetenschappelijke periodiken in Nederlandse bibliotheken"³² describes a union list embracing the periodical holdings of 42 Dutch scientific libraries.

²⁸ *Z.f.B.* 53, 1936. pp. 74-81.

²⁹ *Göttingische Gelehrte Anzeigen*, Nov., 1936, pp. 461-77.

³⁰ *BiLev.*, 21, 1936, pp. 205-10.

³¹ *Ibid.* p. 235.

³² *Ibid.* pp. 64-5.

*Norway*³³.—The University Library of Oslo plans to begin work shortly on a union catalogue of accessions to Norwegian scientific and professional libraries. The need for co-operation has led to the establishment of an annual informal "Conference of State Libraries." The Department of Education is preparing a union list of foreign periodicals in Norway to replace the list published in 1924 by the University library. There is a close and flourishing scheme of co-operation among the libraries of technical colleges in Copenhagen, Stockholm and Trondheim.

Other Countries.—An interesting address on library progress in *China* by Yu Houo-Joel³⁴ gives details of co-operation and union cataloguing. The National Library of Peiping is now issuing printed catalogue cards similar to those of the Library of Congress. An account of Chinese co-operation is also given by K. T. Wu in "Library progress in China"³⁵.

Seven more libraries in *Austria* are now included in the "Deutscher Gesamtkatalog."

U.S.A.

An informal conference on union catalogues was held in April by an A.L.A. committee and its report³⁶ contains much interesting information on the many union catalogues now in progress in the States.

A new catalogue is reported in our footnote 1—the Union Library Catalogue of the Philadelphian Metropolitan Area, a card catalogue of about 150 libraries in the district, which is remarkable in being an author catalogue of *all* material, including fiction and music. The work only began in January, 1936, but it is estimated that there will be over 2½ million entries by the end of 1937. It has issued two publications—an "Interim Report of Progress, April 21st,

³³ *I.F.L.A. Publications*, 8, 1936, pp. 160-2.

³⁴ *Ibid.* pp. 125-29.

³⁵ *L.J.* Dec., 1926, pp. 950-53.

³⁶ A.L.A. Committee on Resources of American Libraries. Report of the informal conference on union catalogues, April 17th and 18th, 1936. 46 pp.

1936," and "Libraries included in the records, July 23rd, 1936."

C. W. Smith in "A regional bibliographical centre for the Pacific Northwest³⁷" suggests a conference to establish such a centre. J. F. Ballard gives an interesting account of the work done by the Medical Library Association and the Special Libraries Association to promote co-operation among special libraries in "Co-operation and co-ordination in special library work³⁸," and mentions that a successful start has been made by Boston medical libraries with co-operative buying and co-operative staffing. "The Union Catalogue of medical literature in Chicago, now open for reference³⁹," is described by O. F. Kampmeier. It has at present cards for three university medical college libraries and should be finished in two or three years.

The report of the Sub-Committee of the Illinois Library Association on Library Support and Extension⁴⁰, urging co-operation, suggests that locations should be made known by each library checking the "Standard Catalog for Public Libraries," symbols representing ownership subsequently being transferred to copies of the catalogue held by the other co-operating libraries.

"A symposium concerning union catalogs" by A. F. Wood and E. Holcomb⁴¹ contains information on the various methods of compiling and housing the union catalogues of the big American libraries and C. B. Joeckel's "A 'little capital' for libraries in Chicago⁴²" deals with the suitability of Chicago as a centre for co-operation in the Middle West.

INTERNATIONAL

International Federation of Library Associations.—The Federation's Publications 8, much cited above, is a mine of information. It has reports on library progress in most

³⁷ *P.N.L.A. Quarterly*, 1st Oct., 1936, pp. 10-11.

³⁸ *Bull. Med. L. A.*, 24, 1936, pp. 149-54.

³⁹ *Ibid.* p. 169.

⁴⁰ *Illinois Libraries*, Oct., 1936.

⁴¹ *L.J.* Feb., 1936, pp. 91-96.

⁴² *L.Q.* July, 1936, pp. 221-36.

European and some Asiatic countries, but by far the most interesting article from our point of view is the "Règlement du prêt international." These rules for international lending are simple and comprehensive and follow in the main those in force in our own regional systems. A central library in each country is recommended, through which applications should be made, but full provision is made for applications from countries with no such library. General principles of restriction according to value, price and frequent demand are laid down, and each library is expected to ascertain that any book is unobtainable in its own country before applying for international loan. The various forms and labels are reproduced in the text and are of a commendable simplicity. A sub-committee, set up to consider questions of legal responsibility, could only come to the very general conclusions that the lending library must assess the value of loans and that disputes should, if possible, be settled by arbitration, failing that, by the laws of the country of loan. An International Committee of Agricultural Librarians (pp. 187-90) has been formed and plans much useful co-operative work in its own special field, including compilation of union catalogues and schemes for inter-lending.

Activity towards a union catalogue of Latin-American books carried on jointly by the Library of Congress, the Bibliotheca Nacional of Madrid and the Inter-American Bibliographical Association is reported by J. T. Vance in "A union catalogue of Latin-American books"⁴³.

⁴³ *A.L.A. Bull.* 30. May, 1936, p. 389.

CHAPTER IX

PROFESSIONAL EDUCATION

By HANNAH SMITH, M.A., F.L.A., *Librarian, City of Leeds Training College*

THERE is nothing sensational to record in the development of professional education during 1936. The pre-professional education of aspirants to librarianship, the claims of apprenticeship and scholarship, and the extension of the work of training agencies already in existence are perennial problems for which no easy solution can be found.

The United States of America.

American literature is the most abundant and detailed. The best pre-professional training is discussed by Marie M. Hostetter in "The academic training of the librarian"¹. Library schools should be able to advise future librarians on their academic training, and indicate what subjects, if any, should be included in the general education programme of every prospective librarian, what requirements within each subject are desirable, what fields of librarianship demand special subject training and information, and what equipment for research is needed by the librarian. Miss Hostetter recalls the West Baden Conference of the A.L.A. in 1928 as the most thorough investigation of these problems, and describes the essential knowledge under three heads: a survey of the general history of science along with intensive work in some special field; a comprehensive view of the literature of the principal languages, with emphasis on the important figures in each, and an intensive study of the literature of one small country; and a survey of the social sciences.

The Board of Education for Librarianship of the A.L.A.

¹ *L.J.* 61, 1936, pp. 139-40.

continues to discourage the establishment of new library schools, to encourage courses already established, and to plead for greater financial support to carry out special studies, to produce reports on significant aspects of library education and to inspect library schools. "No library school now has an endowment comparable with that of the great professional schools in other fields"². In particular, the Board would like to develop a study of library training in European countries, which would give a better perspective on American methods and help to improve the American system of education for librarianship.

There is a new and definite tendency to concentrate library training agencies in the various States. North Dakota, for instance, recommends to the board of administration of State library planning agencies that the training of teacher librarians be concentrated at one State institution; Kentucky similarly recommends centralisation of all library instruction in the State at the University of Kentucky³. Such a concentration should help to solve the problem of certification, and put an end to the great disparity which at present exists in the value of library training qualifications. Legal certification would assure the community of a reasonably qualified personnel, would protect employees from political interference, and establish satisfactory standards for different kinds of library work. In the "Proceedings of the 58th Annual Conference of the Board of Education for Librarianship of the A.L.A."⁴ the certification law of *Virginia* is described. The law is applicable to all large libraries supported by public funds, with the exception of the law libraries and school libraries. Some States have already laid down their requirements for school librarians, as in *Louisiana*, which is commented on later in this chapter. *Iowa* has formulated a revised plan for certification as follows:⁵

² *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 316-25. Development in education for librarianship.

³ *Ibid.*, pp. 138-46. Library planning in the United States, by W. C. Haygood.

⁴ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 636-648.

⁵ *L.J.* 1936, p. 968, Certification in Iowa.

Grade A : Life certificate based on 12 or 18 credits.

Grade B : 5 year certificate. 8 credits.

Grade C : 3 year certificate. 5 credits.

Grade D : 1 year certificate. 2½ credits.

The grading of librarians is determined by their library experience and ability, and credits are based on the duration of their college training courses, on post-graduate college or library work, and on library training and experience, administrative or other. Library school work offered for credits must be in schools accredited by the Board of Education for Librarianship of the A.L.A.

Law libraries in the U.S.A. seem so far to have ignored training in librarianship for their staffs, but are awakening to the need of it. Although there are about 600 law libraries, the largest being that of the *Harvard Law School*, there are no accepted standards for the education of their staffs. Arthur S. Beardsley in "Education for law librarianship"⁶ states four problems to be considered: the need for a programme, the type of programme to be adopted, the content of the curriculum, and the responsibility of library schools and the Board of Education for Librarianship towards the problem. The minimum legal education that should be recommended ought to be that evidenced by a degree from a reputable school of law. The author pays much attention to the organisation of courses, summer schools and home study. A suggested curriculum is included, and the need is stressed for the A.L.A. to give active support to the American Association of Law Libraries in the matter.

A few experiments in *internships* which enable library school graduates to secure desirable experience immediately following professional study, support the idea that further experiments would be desirable if the programme could be financed. The library of *Colorado State College of Education* announced in the *A.L.A. Bull.*, that it was selecting as interns persons trained as school librarians, and interested in supplementing this training from the educational and psychological points of view. There were in 1936

⁶ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, pp. 168-77.

two such internships during the regular school year, and two additional during the summer. The latter would complete all their work in summer terms, and were intended for school librarians already in the field. The stipend offered was \$50 per month for half-time work of twenty hours a week⁷.

The Columbia University School of Library Service, however, reporting on an experiment with two graduate interns, showed that although the work of the interns was above criticism, internship was too costly for the college⁸. Special developments in the library schools of America include the following :

(i) The establishment of a three-summer programme of training Negro teacher-librarians at four selected institutions, *Fisk University*, *Hampton Institute*, *Atlanta University* and *Prairie View State College, Texas*. Enrolment in each agency was limited to twenty-five teacher-librarians in positions or under appointment, and recommended by their respective State agents of Negro education. Hitherto the *Hampton Institute* had been the only library school devoted to the training of Negro librarians⁹.

(ii) The enlargement of the teaching staff and quarters of the *Louisiana Library School* because of the greatly increased demand for trained school-librarians in the State. To meet the standards set by the State Department of Education, a school with an enrolment of 200 or less must have a librarian with at least six semester hours' training in library science, the requirements increasing with the size of the school, so that in a school of over 500 a librarian with from 24 to 30 hours' training is essential. Most Louisiana schools are trying to meet these demands in order to remain on the State approved list¹⁰.

(iii) The *Columbia School of Library Service* has organised the new curriculum of the first year's work into fewer and larger units, reducing the study of technical processes and

⁷ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, p. 1011.

⁸ *Ibid.*, p. 647.

⁹ *A.L.A. Bull.*, 30, 1936, p. 1001.

¹⁰ *L.J.* 61, 1936, p. 634. Louisiana Library School.

routine to a minimum, emphasising a thorough knowledge of the books essential in different kinds of library service, an understanding of the principles of organisation and administration, and an appreciation of the fundamental social and educational function of the library.

An outline of a course for the training of County librarians also appears in the *A.L.A. Bulletin*, p. 695. The course is for one semester and is elective. It includes a study of social economic and governmental trends in rural life; the law, history and development of county and regional libraries; the making of local surveys; organisation and administration, and the relation of County libraries with educational agencies and groups of all kinds.

England and Scotland.

The courses offered by the *Library Association* and the *School of Librarianship of the University of London* have been continued, the latter introducing the new syllabus referred to in the *Year's Work*, vol. 7, at the beginning of the session 1935-1936. During the session 1936-1937 the *School of Librarianship* proposed to offer three new advanced courses¹¹, each of which would consist of eight or ten classes and be held one in each term. The subjects offered were (i) advanced cataloguing, including early printed books, government publications, etc.; (ii) editing and producing library catalogues, etc.; (iii) lectures and demonstrations on library work with children. The courses are intended for assistants anxious to qualify for more responsible posts. Certificates will not be given for attendance at these courses.

A summer school was held at Birmingham as usual, and the *Scottish L.A.* also organised a summer school at Edinburgh. Wireless discussion groups, which usually meet in public libraries, were catered for by the B.B.C. which arranged its fifth summer school for the training of discussion group leaders. The school was in two parts, one week at Edinburgh and one in Oxford. All these items are to be found in the *Library Association Record*, vol. 38, 1936.

¹¹ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 393.

The apprenticeship method of training assistants in public libraries is fully discussed by J. T. Gillett in a paper on "The training of library staffs," printed in the "Proceedings of the Margate Conference"¹². The point is made that not only should departmental heads really train the new entrants and give them an insight into all the work of each department in turn, but that the chief librarian might train his departmental heads and give them an insight into his own administrative work, committee work, and so on, by some such method as taking them in turn as his personal assistant. Staff guilds, exchanging posts, travelling scholarships and assistance in preparation for professional examinations, are all evaluated as means of training library staffs. A special plea for an exchange of posts between English and Australian libraries is recorded in the October issue of the *L.A.R.*¹³

Australia.

The position in Australia is exhaustively treated in "Australian Libraries," by Ralph Munn and Ernest R. Pitt¹⁴, a study not seen by the present writer in time for inclusion in vol. 8 of the *Year's Work*. The lack of library training facilities, of effecting exchanges between Australian librarians and the fewness of great libraries are all factors which retard professional education in the Dominion. Certain of the State libraries are sufficiently well staffed to give satisfactory training to assistants, and the report recommends that they should temporarily be willing to accept apprentices sent to them from other libraries as well. A system of graded examinations and certificates, which would be recognised throughout Australia, should be devised through co-operation among the trustees of the State libraries. *The Public Library of New South Wales*

¹² *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 304-10.

¹³ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 526-27: Exchange of Assistants, by Nancy Booker.

¹⁴ *Australian Libraries: a survey of conditions and suggestions for their improvement*, by R. Munn and E. R. Pitt. Prepared under the auspices of the Carnegie Corporation of New York. Melbourne, 1935.

has a formal system of examinations and the *Public Library of Victoria* is planning one. Unfortunately, in the State libraries the staff rank as Civil Servants, and promotion and salary increases are gained by seniority, regardless of any effort made by the individual to improve himself professionally. The report recommends that the age and standard of admission to library work should be raised, and that salary increments and promotion should be dependent on work for fuller training. Until there is a sufficient demand for trained librarians the establishment of a library school is impossible, and apprenticeship is the only method of training.

There is little to note in other parts of the British Empire. The *L.A.R.* notes the organisation of a summer school by the *South African Library Association*¹⁵, specially designed for those with little or no experience, and the *Bengal Library Association*¹⁶, in an attempt to develop and reform its school library system, proposes to try to open a library training school for school librarians, and asks the *University of Calcutta* to start a training department separately to train all school librarians of Bengal as soon as possible.

Germany.

German literature on professional training includes a study of the work of student-assistants in German university libraries, a comparison of German and Norwegian university libraries (the result of an exchange of posts between two library assistants at Kiel and Oslo), and articles on the education of the staff of the learned library service. All are given in full in *Z.f.B.*, and under the heading "Contemporaries" in the *L.A.R.* summaries of the last two occur also. "Das Referatsystem," by L. Klaiber¹⁷ gives a general sketch of the work of student-assistants, with a particular account of the system in the University Library of Freiburg-i-B. "Bericht über meinen

¹⁵ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 178.

¹⁶ *Ibid.*, pp. 158 and 528.

¹⁷ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 69-73.

Aufenthalt als Austauschbibliothekar an der U.B. Oslo," by O. Klose¹⁸, points out the similarities as well as the chief differences in German and Norwegian library practice, particularly the absence of "middle" grades of staff in Norway. Much work done by middle grades in Germany is done by men of University standing in Norway, with the result that many verbal enquiries made at the counter can be answered immediately; some 85 per cent of all demands in the lending department are satisfied within fifteen minutes.

Dr. Ernst Leipprand¹⁹, in "Fragen der Ausbildung für den wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheksdienst," discusses the education of the staff of the learned library service at the annual conference of the association of German (learned) librarians, and briefly reviews methods of training in various countries. He is impressed by the emphasis laid on technical training in England and the U.S.A., and by the absence of any attempt to distinguish between technical and learned librarianship. In Germany administrative ability ranks second to scholarship in library service. Dr. Leipprand contends that scholarly librarianship begins where mere record-keeping ends, and pleads for the specialist in preference to the administrator.

At the same conference Dr. Georg Leyh suggested that the library staff should have at least one man qualified in each faculty, and more than one in the faculty of Arts, to deal with book-selection, subject cataloguing and answering enquiries²⁰.

Russia.

"Libraries in the U.S.S.R.," by W. C. Haygood²¹, reviews the facilities for library training in Russia, and describes them as varied as numerous. The library university, a department of the Lenin Memorial at Moscow,

¹⁸ *Z.f.B.*, 53, 1936, pp. 255-61, summarised in *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, pp. 560-61.

¹⁹ *Z.f.B.*, 53, Sept.-Oct., 1936, pp. 490-502, summarised in *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, p. 606-07.

²⁰ Summarised in *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, p. 606.

²¹ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, p. 439.

provides a course in the usual university subjects, and 40 days in each semester are spent in practical library work studying actual reader-needs.

Advanced library specialists are trained at the Scientific Research Institute of Library Science, and at the Lenin-grad and Kharkov Institutes of Political Education, candidates are chosen from persons of higher library education who have served as librarians for a requisite period, and who (since the Soviet librarian is as much social worker as librarian) have engaged in actual social work. Correspondence courses are given all over the country and it must be remembered that only part of the Soviet plan is yet in operation.

In an article in Russian "On the training of specialist librarians in schools of librarianship",²² G. Luriya says that in Russia there are 19 schools of librarianship and 14 librarianship departments in the technical schools of the Board of Political Education ["Politprosvet"] which in 1936 had 6,835 students. The rate of growth is shown by a comparison with the figures for 1933, viz. four schools with 1,042 students. Training in librarianship is, however, hampered by lack of books, lack of teachers and by the low standard of education of the students, who often show little inclination to read books.

China.

"Libraries in China—papers prepared on the occasion of the tenth anniversary of the Library Association of China," published by the *Library Association of China*, 1935, is the most useful source book for this country. The chapter on "Professional training of librarianship in China," by Samuel T. Y. Seng, realises that a beginning has been made, but much remains to be done. "Library progress in China," by K. T. Wu²³, points out how much the revolution has hastened the realisation of the value of libraries as an educational social and political factor. The office of librarian is no longer regarded as a sinecure; it is recog-

²² *Krasny Bibliotekar*, 14, 1936, No. 12, pp. 8-16.

²³ *L.ž.*, 61, 1936, p. 950.

nised that library training is necessary if the use of books is to be promoted. The *Boone Library School* gives a two-year course, and is supported by the *China Foundation for the promotion of Education and Culture*. In addition, courses on library science are offered in many universities, thus enabling Chinese libraries to recruit high-grade staff. For advanced training many librarians go to the U.S.A. and to Europe.

CHAPTER X

LIBRARY BUILDINGS

By EDWARD J. CARTER, B.A., A.R.I.B.A., *Librarian,*
Royal Institute of British Architects

THE amount and importance of library building in 1936 has been so great that this year there is no space for any talk about the plans in general or moralising about the deplorable state of English library building. In some respects there seems to be an increase in architectural consciousness, particularly in the sphere of small public library building, but too much work of real prominence is mediocre. It would be easy to suggest, but perhaps less easy to maintain, that the low quality of library building is due chiefly to the habit of building libraries without architects. But even if it can be shown, as I think it can, that no really good library can be obtained without the employment of that elaborate range of abilities that goes to compose the Architect, it must be agreed that all architects are not possessed of the particular expert knowledge necessary to solve a librarian's problems with complete success. But the architects and the librarians are taking this matter more seriously than they have in the past. As a testimony to the increasing interest which architects are now taking in library building in great Britain, the R.I.B.A. arranged for a paper to be read to them on library planning by Mr. H. A. Dod, F.R.I.B.A., Architect of the New Liverpool University Library. Mr. Dod's paper was fully reported and illustrated in the R.I.B.A. *Journal*¹. Unfortunately, in the opinion of many librarians present, Mr. Dod chose to give an unduly large part of his paper to historical survey and discussion of the broad features of big university institutional and national library planning,

¹ *R.I.B.A.J.*, 43, 1936. pp. 685-701.

with few particular references to the problems which most trouble librarians. These are small detailed problems of finishes, materials and equipment. Big library jobs do not appear often and they are generally in the competent hands of able librarians and highly qualified architects. What the two professions most want is authoritative information to help them solve less dramatic problems economically and efficiently. Mr. Dod's paper, however, contained a number of interesting and constructive opinions on the relation of the stack to the plan as a whole.

There are a few other general articles deserving record. A Canadian architect, Mr. Philip Turner, of McGill University, whose writings on libraries have often been noted here, contributed an informative survey of recent English library buildings to the *Library Journal*². Among the buildings described and illustrated by plans are the Manchester Reference, Sheffield, Cambridge University and the R.I.B.A. Libraries.

In the *Library Journal* of October³ is an interesting general article on modern Danish libraries, by M. K. Kristofferson of Detroit Public Library. The article describes the Danish library organisation and gives a brief account of one or two buildings. The library at Frederiksberg, a suburb of Copenhagen, receives special notice: this was opened in the autumn of 1935. The author commends the modernity and efficiency of Danish library equipment, particularly the universal use of open shelves.

Another general article in the *Library Journal*⁴ of particular interest describes the provision of open-air reading-rooms in America. This is a feature which I have frequently commended but as yet it is quite unknown in England. A large part of the article describes the portable libraries organised by the public library services in the U.S.A. for people in parks and on beaches: as such it comes outside the scope of an article concerned with buildings, but it

² *L.J.*, 61, August, 1936. pp. 565-70.

³ *L.J.*, 61, Oct., 1936. pp. 726-27.

⁴ *L.J.*, 61, 15 Sept., 1936. pp. 667-70.

this building contains the very latest equipment, is more air-conditioned, more fire-proofed and more thoroughly provided with every conceivable protection from natural and human marauders than any other library in the States. In addition to the unbound archives, there will be provision for storing a library of some 500,000 volumes, so that the library may provide a comprehensive source of information to all aspects of American history.

Another American library of some importance is the Annapolis, Maryland, U.S.A., Hall of Records⁸, a state archives building erected to commemorate the three hundredth anniversary of the founding of the province. The building stands at one end of the campus of St. John's College, with near it a number of good buildings, some dating from the middle of the 18th century; the college library is at one end of the campus and the Hall of Records at the other. The conditions of the site called for such a modest traditional brick building as Mr. Laurence H. Fowler has given. The site slopes from the campus towards which the building had to face; this introduced certain planning difficulties. Since the entrance had to be accessible to the general public the approach-walk is alongside the face of the building and not from the campus in front.

An illustrated description of the new Stadsbibliotheek, Antwerp, is given in *Bibliotheekgids*⁹. The new premises are connected to the former Jesuits' house. The main rooms on the first floor include an enquiry bureau, the catalogue-room and the reading-room. These rooms are well lit by skylights, and fitted with modern equipment: floor-covering in rubber, furniture in chromium-plated metal and black ebonite, bookcases in grey-coloured steel. The new stacks are on the ground floor and in the basement, all in steel and concrete; they give accommodation for about 150,000 volumes. On the second floor and higher are the work-rooms and a fire-proof chamber for rare books and manuscripts.

⁸ *Arch. Rev.*, 79, 1936. pp. 194-95.

⁹ *BiGi.*, 15, 1936, pp. 36-38.

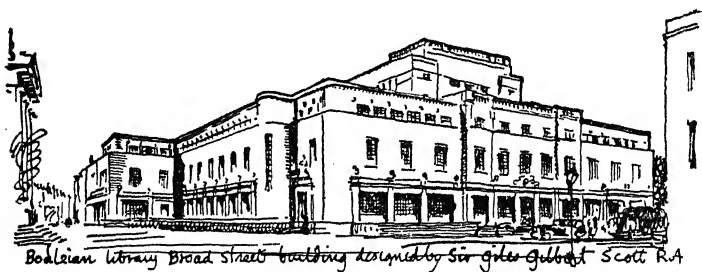
The proposed plan for the Vienna Central Library by Dr. Werner Theiss is illustrated without detailed description in the *Architects' Journal*¹⁰. This plan consists of a circular tower stack of about 20 floors with seven radial stacks leading from it and a circumferential passage, like the rim of a wheel, containing studies and catalogues.

In Sweden a new local archives store has been built at Härnösand¹¹. It consists of a six-floor stack with a two-floor reading-room and offices wing attached.

Designs for a large map-library at Moscow by N. Kostochkine are given in *Stroitelstvo Moskoi*¹².

UNIVERSITY AND SCHOOL LIBRARIES IN ENGLAND AND ABROAD

The publication of the designs for The Bodleian Library Broad Street Building is the most important event within the scope of this report. A sad event in some ways because the highly stylised building with its feet uneasily planted rather far apart in the camps of modern and renaissance will be a strange neighbour to the Clarendon and the Old



Bodleian. Plans of two floors are shown on page 105 and a view above. The chief feature is the great stack for three million books, which, following several excellent precedents, notably perhaps Yale and Columbia, rises in the un-daylit centre of the block. This is well served by stairs and lifts. There are eleven decks : three below ground, which extend over the whole site, and two above the level of the rest of

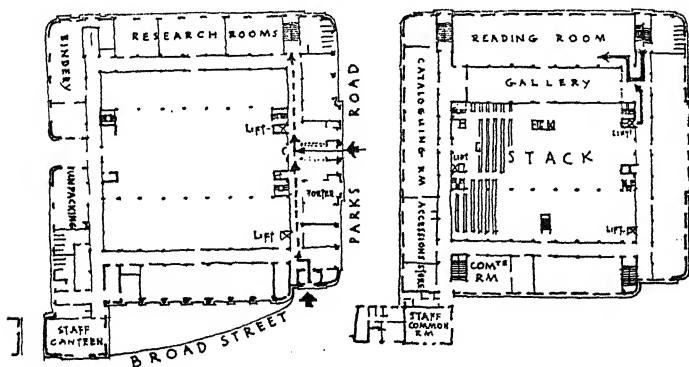
¹⁰ *A.J.*, 17 Dec., 1936. p. 829.

¹¹ *Byggmästaren*, 1936, No. 8. pp. 90-91.

¹² *Str. Mos.*, 1936, No. 4. pp. 4-8.

the building. These are well set back so that this tower will hardly be visible. The stack is encircled by a passage, outside which, and getting good daylight, are ranges of rooms including on the east front a reading-room, 110 feet by 30 feet, seating seventy or eighty readers at the generous minimum allowance of 40 square feet per reader. On the inner side of the reading-room is a top-lit catalogue gallery excellently placed in relation to reading-room, stack and cataloguing-room. Readers having access to the stack will go to it through this gallery. The plan provides for study carrells round the upper day-lit decks of the stack. This is a notable concession to the opinions of Mr. Harrod, who, in his minority report in the 1931 report of the Bodleian Commission, recommended carrells against the views of the majority.

The conditions under which Sir Giles Gilbert Scott worked laid down that provision should be made for experiments in library administration, consequently there are large unallocated spaces in the rooms part of the building. Partitions are to be easily removed or added and if necessary the stack on some floors can be extended to the outer walls. In view of this provision for experiment it is hardly possible to comment on the administration side of the plan, except to say that Dr. Craster and those who worked with him have provided generously for efficient modern practice including ample space for photography. The comments, if any may



be dared in the face of such a galaxy of talent as designed the building, are purely architectural. The chief is that the entrances seem designed most unconvincingly. In the report on the plans it was expressly stated that the chief readers' entrance was that on Broad Street opposite the centre of the Clarendon Building, but "architectually" this door is secondary to the Parks Road entrance, which is garnished with all the elaborate paraphernalia of stylistic ingenuity. From the Broad Street door the reader gets first to a small 12 ft.-deep lobby, from a corner of which a long passage leads to a four-foot-wide stair—the only access to the Reading Room apart from a lift, flush with the passage-wall and halfway down the passage. On the Reading Room floor the articulation of the communications is undefined and meagre. On the Parks Road front, the architectural if not the functional front of the library, there are projections and recessions in the wall which are entirely unrelated to any partitions or rooms behind, even where they are fixed. Being less bold they lack even the purely designer's reason of such unrelated wall games as were played by the men of the high renaissance.

For a full account of the building the reader should go to the description by Dr. Craster in the *L.A.R.*¹³ and to the article in the *Architect and Building News*¹⁴.

There have been three minor libraries at Oxford of some interest. St. Catherine's Hall¹⁵, the building of the non-collegiate students, designed by Mr. Herbert Worthington, has a library about 22 × 45 feet, lit on both sides and at one end, divided into three wide bays by wood shelves which rise from floor to ceiling. It is pleasant to look at but contributes nothing new to library design.

In Campion Hall, a new Jesuit College¹⁶, Sir Edwin Lutyens has designed a characteristically charming library, formed with bays of wood book-cases down one side and wall shelves with slightly projecting piers with shelves on the sides facing.

¹³ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, May, pp. 184-90, and June, p. 335.

¹⁴ *A. & B.N.*, 146, 15 May, 1936. pp. 179-82.

¹⁵ *A. & B.N.*, 16 Oct., 1936, p. 70.

¹⁶ *A. & B.N.*, 146, 26 June, 1936. p. 355.

At *St. Hilda's College, Oxford*, Sir Edwin Cooper has built a library in bays of two stories¹⁷. It is a pleasant-looking place, which makes no concession to modern ideas.

At Cambridge, in the *School of Geography*, Messrs. Stanley Hall and Easton & Robinson, F.F.R.I.B.A., have provided a book and map library¹⁸: the former is a room about 38 feet by 41 feet, the latter 24 feet by 41 feet; the maps are kept flat in wooden presses.

The Brotherton Library, Leeds University, is among the most important post-war libraries in England. Dr. Offor and Messrs. Lanchester & Lodge, F.F.R.I.B.A., have between them produced a really interesting building. The circular plan has been used functionally as well as aesthetically and has none of the defects which arise so easily from the glib use of a plan-form with obvious attractions but more difficulties. The capacity at present is for 700,000 volumes, mostly in a basement-stack deep enough to take two decks. Space for another stack for 300,000 volumes is available. The total diameter is 160 feet (20 more than the British Museum), but it is subdivided by a circle of green marble columns, so that the internal space is pleasantly adjusted in scale. The central Reading Room rises the full height to the dome; the outer part of two storeys above ground contains departmental libraries and in the basement newspapers. The special room for the Brotherton Library itself is off the main circle in an adjunct which also contains the librarian's rooms and some offices. The *L.A.R.* description is the most complete of those recorded, except that in addition to two illustrations it has a plan of the ground floor only¹⁹.

The Library for Liverpool University²⁰ by Mr. H. A. Dod, whose paper to the R.I.B.A. was mentioned above, is being built to hold 650,000 books now and a million when fully extended. 103,000 of the present stock will be on open

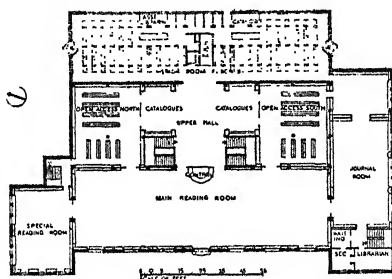
¹⁷ *Bdr.*, 150, 1936. pp. 67-68.

¹⁸ *A.J.*, 18, 1936, pp. 483-88.

¹⁹ *L.A.R.*, Oct., 1936, p. 501. *A. & B.N.*, 9 Oct., 1936, pp. 37-42. *Bdr.*, 9 Oct., 1936, pp. 687-91. *Building*, Nov., 1936, p. 454.

²⁰ *R.I.B.A.J.*, 43, 1936. p. 696. *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 376-79.

access. The plan of the first floor is given below. The chief comments on it are that the relations of the open-access rooms, the reading-room, catalogues and stack, and the main stair seem to be dominated, to their detriment,



by the architect's determination to produce a symmetrical layout. There seems to be no other reason for the separation of the open-access rooms or for the catalogues to be divided and for the main communication between the reading-room and the stack to cross the main and central landing. The cataloguer's room is widely separated from his catalogues.

The Royal Empire Society opened its new building in Northumberland Avenue at the end of 1936. The library has been described by the Assistant-Librarian, Mr. D. H. Varley, in *L.A.R.* as in some respects the principal feature of the building²¹; it occupies the whole of the 1st floor frontage, the main room being 100 feet by 23 feet. This room is entered towards the centre of one of the long sides; facing the entrance is the enquiry-desk. On the window side of the room bays are formed by shelves spaced in pairs, an economical arrangement resembling that at the Buckler Building, Magdalen College, Oxford, as designed by Sir Giles Gilbert Scott. On the opposite side closely spaced presses are surmounted by a gallery. The whole arrangement is congested: this was not the architect's fault, but was due to the choice of a closely confined central London site with particular light and air restrictions. The architects

²¹ *L.A.R.*, 38, Dec., 1936, pp. 600-03. *A. & B.N.*, 1936, 23 Oct., 1936, pp. 98-105. *Bdr.*, 6 Nov., 1936, p. 882.

were Sir Herbert Baker, R.A., and T. A. Scott, F.R.I.B.A.

In America there are only three University Libraries to record: at Utah, at Temple University, Philadelphia, and at the University of Southern California. The University of Utah Library, opened in December 1935, was illustrated and described in the *Library Journal*²². Its stacks hold 50,000 volumes on each of four decks and two more can be added. The plan is shaped like a dumpy 'U,' with the space between the arms filled by the staircase-hall and the stack behind. On the sides are reading-rooms and on the right offices. The whole of the first floor is occupied by the great reading-room, 192 feet by 46 feet, which runs through two floors. The room seats 348, allowing 3 feet space at table for each reader. All told the building seats 1,200 readers and holds 300,000 books.

The new Sullivan Memorial Library of Temple University, Philadelphia, Pa.²³, is a characteristic collegiate Gothic building. This is Gothic gone mad, with light relief provided by "an attractively designed aquarium and rock garden" in the Reserve Book Room "to secure a bit of variation and break the flat effect of so many tables and chairs"—well, well! After one has dodged the aquarium and wrenched one's distracted attention from the *olde English roofs* and decorations, one can notice a carefully planned compact library with a capacity of 250,000 volumes and efficient modern equipment, except wherever, as perhaps in the lighting, Gothic Principles do not conflict with modern practice; in such cases the Goths win hands down. The stack has carrells.

The E. L. Doheny, Jr., Memorial Library, University of Southern California, by Cram & Ferguson and S. E. Lunden, is characteristic of American "memorial" library building. The description²⁴ is inadequate.

The library in the vast new Physics department of Rome University, built by G. Pagano²⁵, occupies one room about

²² *L. J.*, 61, 15 Oct., 1936. pp. 751-53.

²³ *L. J.*, 61, July, 1936. pp. 523-25.

²⁴ *Architecture* (N.Y.), 72, 1936. pp. 187-90.

²⁵ *Casa Bella*, 14, 99. p. 23.

20 by 12 metres. One long side is almost all window facing West, down the opposite wall are twelve double-tier ranges of steel-bracket shelving, the upper tier approached by a short straight flight of metal steps open to the library. The arrangement gives about 800 metres of shelf-run and space for about 15,000 books, which form part of the general University City Library of about 600,000 books. The reading-room seats about 16 readers, 4 at a table.

So much for Universities, which are always treated generously in the matter of library provision. Schools, on the other hand, are always neglected, so that the issue of a Carnegie Report on the subject is an event of great importance and will, it is hoped, be fruitful of much good. School librarians generally are amateurs. Their libraries are only too often simply side lines and the rooms, even when specially provided, are generally badly designed. The Carnegie U.K. Trust appointed an excellent committee to report on the whole question, and the Report²⁶ published early in 1936 has dealt faithfully with the problem. They assert that: "In no department of the secondary school system is there greater need for development than in the provision and quality of school libraries." The report deals with much more than architecture but the architectural problem is fundamental. Simply to provide a range or two of shelves in a classroom is not to provide a library, even if the books are good. A school library must be a room "entirely reserved from ordinary purposes of classroom instruction . . . what must be avoided is the practice of regarding the library as merely additional classroom space." The committee has prepared two typical plans, but they state wisely that they do not wish their report to lead to the adoption of a stereotyped plan, believing that experiment should be encouraged. The plans prepared by the Kent County architect are excellent and the whole architectural part of the report is helpful and sensible.

In conclusion, there is one other school library worth

²⁶ *Libraries in Secondary Schools*. A report to the Carnegie U.K. Trust. Edinburgh, 1936.

noting. The Essex Education Authority have built a vast Technical College on the outskirts of London for the south-eastern part of the county²⁷. It includes a large library about 76 feet by 28 feet, divided into bays by normal-height shelves. The illustrations in *Building* have no adequate description and the plan does not show the arrangement of equipment.

PUBLIC LIBRARIES IN ENGLAND

A short while ago the district covered by Purley, Coulsdon, Sanderstead and Henley was taken from the Kent County Library service and made into an Urban library area. Four excellent libraries have been built in the places named, by Messrs. Gold and Aldridge, F. and A.R.I.B.A. The central library at Purley has three good-sized rooms for Lending, Children and Reference; the last two sharing supervision and the children's room having a separate entrance. The branch libraries at Coulsdon and Sanderstead are similar with centralised supervision of openly planned rooms with a minimum of partitions and no projecting cases. All the areas except Sanderstead are built up so that it has been possible to calculate demand with reasonable hope of accuracy. Only at Sanderstead, where this was not possible, allowance has been made for extension. They are all built in brick and are in a modest though rather mannered style which should please. They were described fully in the *Architect and Building News* for 26th June, 1936.

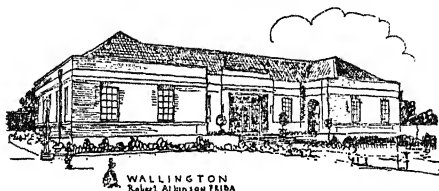
The Devonshire Hill Branch, Tottenham, is one of the largest libraries of its kind recorded this year. Its designer is Mr. H. E. Askey, L.R.I.B.A. The plan is ingenious but it is disappointing to see a library with so many completely internal rooms lit only by skylights. If a site is too small or the wrong shape to take a building of the necessary accommodation without having to adopt these outworn expedients, then the library authorities must find another site or reduce their requirements if they really want a library

²⁷ *Building*, Nov., 1936, p. 460.

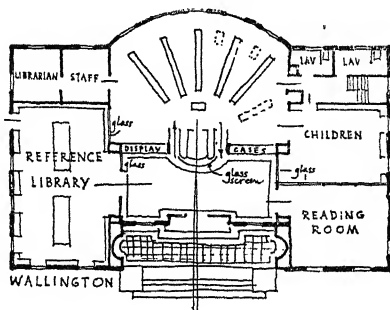
that will be an honour to them, not only during the first flush of pride in a new thing, but always²⁸.

In ten years, perhaps, when children will have their open-air schools, have freer, better and more hygienic homes, more open-air life in all their affairs, they won't come to a top-lit library, any more than anyone now, unless he can help it, patronises the old-fashioned, dim, dirty municipal swimming-baths that once passed as being suitable for town dwellers.

Mr. Robert Atkinson's Public library for Wallington, Surrey²⁹, is an exceedingly pleasant place. The plan is



neat and open, though restricted in some respects by its rigid symmetry. A generous hall, open except for a showcase barrier to the lending library, is a good feature. The Reference library is abnormally large in proportion to the rest of the building, but a special donation was received to



supply it. There is no provision made for extension, and except for the Reference library the room provided is not generous.

²⁸ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 65-68. *Surveyor*, 10 Apr., 1936. *Builder*, 17 April, 1936. pp. 779-81.

²⁹ *A. & B.N.*, 18 Sept., 1936. pp. 343-46.

An extension to the Scarborough Public Library³⁰, by J. Paton Watson with G. W. Alderson as assistant, provides new Reference, Junior and Lending libraries sub-divided by low screens and book-cases. The whole arrangement is neat and fresh and carefully planned to quicken up book deliveries. The plan of the staff enclosure is unusual and interesting. No expedients seem to have been adopted to assure perfect supervision and the architectural quality of the whole gains as a result.

A branch of the Hendon library has been built on a small site in the Golders Green Road³¹. The size of the site (45 feet by 110 feet) compelled the combination of lending library and reading-room, the placing of staff enclosure between the adult and junior libraries so as to control both, and the use of the children's library as a lecture-room; none of these, except perhaps the first, is fundamentally undesirable. The plan explains the disposition of rooms. Over the Junior room is a 20 feet by 20 feet store, a staff-room, lavatories and kitchen. The balcony at the far end of the big room gives additional storage and a librarian's office.

The July *L.A.R.* contained a short description of the new branch of the Bristol Public Library at Westbury-on-Trym. There is no plan given but from the photograph this seems to be a seemly building. The November *L.A.R.* had a similar brief description of a new branch at Birkenhead.

The façade of the Osterley Branch Library on the Great West Road is illustrated in *Building*³². This is unusual and attractive.

FOREIGN PUBLIC LIBRARIES

A good characteristic American public library at Cornwall, New York, is illustrated in *Architecture*³³. The present capacity is for 12,000 volumes but the stack can be extended.

³⁰ *A.J.*, 26 Nov., 1936. pp. 735-38.

³¹ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. p. 11.

³² *Building*, Sept., 1936. p. 366.

³³ *Architecture* (N.Y.), 73, 1936. p. 9.

The whole control is in the hands of a single librarian, consequently the plan is without sub-divisions; though all corners are not in sight of her desk. Full supervision at all times is evidently not considered necessary, since the account states that part of the librarian's time will be spent in the repair-room, where she is still readily accessible. In the basement is a large room for lectures and art classes, with a separate entrance.

A medium-sized American public library at York, Pennsylvania, is illustrated without plans in the *Library Journal* for 15th January, 1936. The building is in the polite colonial Georgian style, quite unimaginative but quite harmless. It houses 100,000 volumes.

The *Library Journal* for 1st May has special articles on the Virginia libraries. The 8th annual convention of the A.L.A. was held in Virginia State and the articles were written to provide a general guide. Most of the buildings are not new and some, such as the great public library at Richmond, have already been described in detail in *The Year's Work*. One fairly new library of importance is the Medical College Library, Richmond.

Of Public libraries in Europe the Viipuri library³⁴ in Finland is architecturally one of the most interesting. It is full of the characteristic ingenuities of Alvar Aalto,³⁵ its architect. The accounts in the journals are uncritical " appreciations " which tell practically nothing; the only other account in the August *L.A.R.* is derived from them, so has no more facts but is rather more critical. The building deserves study chiefly as an example of modern design in which the æsthetic solution is derived positively and originally from the functional problem.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, there are a few books and general articles which deserve notice.

For several years two anonymous writers, E. and O. E.,

³⁴ *Arch. Rev.*, 79, 1936. pp. 107-14.

³⁵ *Arkitekten* (Helsingfors), 1935. pp. 145-57.

have contributed articles on the planning and equipment of various types of buildings to the *Architect and Building News*³⁶. The articles, which have now been collected into a volume, includes one on libraries. It is a balanced survey of best current practice and is likely to be useful to any librarian or architect concerned in building. Since written for architects, the article is full of explanations of things which every librarian knows already, nevertheless it is one of the clearest and best statements of library planning and equipment practice yet published.

An article in the *Library Journal*³⁷ on bookstack planning with the "Cubook" by R. W. Henderson is a useful supplement to the previous *L.J.* article on the "Cubook" formula for calculating library-shelf capacity which was commented on last year.

There were three papers of architectural interest at the Annual *L.A.* Conference³⁸. Dr. Craster expounded the Bodleian plans, Mr. Jast showed that a building large enough to hold the 25,000,000 books estimated as still being in existence would cover an area larger than St. Paul's Cathedral and be 225 feet high, and Mr. Irwin had some useful suggestions to give on the planning of County Library Headquarters. He suggested that accommodation should vary from quarter of a million to hundred thousand books, according to the county size; he also emphasised particularly the desirability of including a students' reading-room. The paper was full of ambitious ideas which deserve attention.

³⁶ Planning, an annual notebook by E. and O. E., 1936. *Architect and Building News*.

³⁷ *L.J.* 61. 15 Jan. 1936. pp. 52-54.

³⁸ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, June, p. 335 [and May, pp. 184-90] (Craster), pp. 353-60 (Jast), pp. 311-18 (Irwin).

CHAPTER XI

LIBRARY PRACTICE

I. ORGANIZATION AND ROUTINE

By W. A. MUNFORD, B.Sc., F.L.A.,
Librarian, Dover Public Library

GENERAL

THE first important general publication of the year is the *L.A.*'s volume of public library statistics (1934/5)¹. This new "parish register" is more comprehensive than the 1933 White Paper, as this covered only England and Wales. It presents a full survey of the nation's library service to 46 million readers, stock, issues, income and expenditure, etc. A report on the libraries of the Irish Free State² shows that gaps in service still remain to be filled and more generous financial aid is essential.

State control had its place at the Margate Conference, Messrs. Mitchell and Sayers opening a full dress debate. The Council of the *L.A.* was asked to investigate and report on the question, and this report will be considered in the 1937 volume of the present work.

It is interesting that the tendency to dissatisfaction with the *status quo* has also been noteworthy in America. Following the recommendations of an *ad hoc* committee of the *A.L.A.*³, provision was made for an enlarged library division of the department of education. A later report from another *A.L.A.* Committee⁴ recommends federal grants-in-aid, while suggesting that control and administration should remain in

¹ *L.A.* Statistics of urban public libraries in England and Wales (1935). (*L.A.* 2/-).

² Keogh, C. A. Report on public library provision in I.F.S. (Dublin, *L.A.* of Ireland).

³ The need for a federal library agency. *A.L.A.* 30, 1936, pp. 55-63.

⁴ Libraries and federal aid. *Ibid.* pp. 427-71.

the hands of the local authority. It also includes a programme of action for the *A.L.A.*

E. A. Savage⁵, in his Presidential address at Margate, surveys the popular movement which he believes to have been behind the early growth and development of the public library service in this country. He discusses the ideals of the pioneers and considers how far they are being carried out to-day. He also makes a plea for "specialist librarianship," "subject librarians."

Last year I had to note B. M. Headicar's valuable "Manual of library organization." Supplementary points are considered in his new book⁶ which is particularly notable for his reconsideration of the case of the metropolitan library service and his ideas on future buildings. These and six other essays form a thought provoking work which should be compulsory reading for all who seek to encompass something more than the daily round and the common task.

ADMINISTRATION AND GOVERNMENT

Five large municipal library systems provide the basis for a comparative survey of methods and administration by A. D. Roberts⁷. Entrance examinations, bookfunds, cataloguing practice, centralization and a host of other matters are considered and the information resulting is another contribution towards the survey of the large library system which, it is hoped, will come during the next few years.

F. Seymour Smith⁸ discusses reference service in the greater London area and makes several important suggestions, including the preparation of a memorandum on policy, a special reference library section in the *L.A.R.* (this has already been adopted), greater attention to the reasonable demands of students and a number of other matters.

⁵ Public Libraries in a changing world. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936. pp. 271-81.

⁶ The library of the future. 1936 (*Allen and Unwin* 5/-).

⁷ A comparison of services. *L.W.* 39, 1936. pp. 33-36.

⁸ Reference library policy in London libraries, outside the central area. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936. pp. 136-43.

"Regional co-operation" is discussed by W. Tipping⁹. He gives a brief survey of its history and problems, with special reference to the Manchester area. C. B. Joeckel¹⁰ refers to English experience with the *N.C.L.* and the regional bureaux, in his plea for inter-loan and pool development. He surveys the possibilities of regional co-operation in the American Middle West, centring on Chicago, and discusses difficulties and problems.

BOOK SELECTION AND ACQUISITION

During 1936 we have seen further contributions to the perennial "popular or limited appeal" controversy. E. Salter Davies¹¹ emphasizes the current temptation to popularize the library unduly. He denounces censorship and is in favour of a government department for libraries. F. Seymour Smith¹² criticizes current journalistic views on public libraries and asks us "to get back to bibliography, to selection by means of evaluative bibliographies and so by means of personal scholarly knowledge." A. C. Panter¹³ makes an appeal for a definite policy in book-selection, and a series of letters exchanged between E. A. Savage and W. A. Munford¹⁴ argues out the whole matter with undoubted satisfaction to the correspondents. It is feared that a contribution to this subject is now regarded as one of the seven deadly virtues of librarianship. H. E. Greve¹⁵ explains that the guiding principle in the formation of a public library bookstock in Holland is laid down in the conditions of the government subsidy. This provides for a "generally informative and instructive" stock and for impartiality in politics and religion.

The outstanding bibliographical volume of the year is

⁹ *Manchester Librarian* 8, 1936, pp. 49-55.

¹⁰ A "little capital" for libraries in Chicago. *L.Q.* 6, 1936, pp. 221-36.

¹¹ The quality of the library service. *L.R.* 38, 1936, pp. 250-60.

¹² Presidential address. *L.A.* 29, 1936, pp. 112-27.

¹³ Tendencies. *Ibid.* pp. 29-32.

¹⁴ *Ibid.* pp. 152-56; 181-84; 214.

¹⁵ The ephemeral and the permanent. *BiLev.*, 21, 1936, pp. 186-201.

"Books for Youth¹⁶," the new edition of "Books to read," now edited by W. C. Berwick Sayers. It is completely revised, contains a selection of titles from the earlier volume and its supplement, and many new ones, some being most useful to distinctly older readers. We have also to note the sixth edition of the invaluable Mudge¹⁷, now containing 4,000 titles. The new volume by the brothers McColvin¹⁸ is a systematic textbook intended primarily for students in the new section of the *L.A.* examination syllabus. Its very comprehensive bibliographies and notes, however, give it a much wider appeal and its early chapters contain a very useful list of basic stock for the reference library.

E. R. J. Hawkins¹⁹ discusses the co-operation of the library staff in book-selection for the reference library, debates the perennial question "What are reference books?" and has a word on the problem of donations. W. J. Skillern²⁰ deals with the little-worn subject of "Government publications and the local collection," and describes the wide scope of these publications, their selection and use. Useful notes on local Acts of Parliament and maps are included.

Technical books are well served by periodical articles during the year. 1936 is also the first full year of the ASLIB Booklist²¹, which is based on the selections of nearly a hundred specialists and gives valuable help for book-selection in difficult classes. Margaret Windsor²² discusses contemporary reviewing in the same subjects, notes the very common delay in noticing books and includes notes on popular science, its literature and trends. A. D. Roberts²³ describes the methods of selection adopted in the

¹⁶ *L.A.* 1936. 10/-.

¹⁷ Guide to reference books. 6th ed. 1936 (*A.L.A.* \$4.25).

¹⁸ McColvin, L. R. and E. R. Library stock and assistance to readers. 1936 (Grafton 10/6).

¹⁹ Some observations on Reference book selection. *L.W.* 39, 1936. pp. 3-5.

²⁰ *Ibid.* pp. 29-31.

²¹ *A.S.L.I.B.* 10/6 p.a.

²² The selection of science books. *W.B.*, 10, 1936. pp. 375-78.

²³ Fives and sixes. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936. pp. 455-58.

technical library of a large city and surveys bibliographical and periodical aids.

It is pleasing to note an annotated survey of the rapidly growing literature of the Film²⁴. Film societies are being born all over the country and enrol the most cultured and intelligent part of the population. Co-operation with them is attractive ; this article shows us how to begin.

RESEARCH

It is felt that the development of research into reading tastes and associated matters is becoming so important that a special section is now desirable. Practically every issue of the *L.Q.* contains a record of some new evidence of the enquiring mind and this fact alone makes this periodical, in the view of the present writer, easily the most creative influence in the librarianship of the English speaking world. The technique of social research is being adapted in America for investigation into reading and, while most current work is handicapped by the tradition of the questionnaire approach, the results are already promising and may become important.

Helen A. Ridgway²⁵ has made a study of adult readers who do not use the public library. She finds that 56.8 per cent. of those interviewed did not read books and 13.7 per cent. read them only occasionally. 70 per cent. of those non-users of the library service who did read books used the service through other members of their families, an amusing characteristic which is probably encountered by all English librarians. Some used the circulating libraries and a few bought the books they required. Finally "it would seem rather conclusive therefore, that the majority of non-users of the public library are either home-keepers or other non-professional workers and that the latter make less use of the library than any other occupational group . . . The most significant discovery for the library is that, in both

²⁴ Pottinger, M. C. The literature of the film. *Ibid.* pp. 228-37.

²⁵ Reading habits of adult non-users of the public library. *L.Q.* 6, 1936, pp. 1-33.

groups, 80 per cent. of the people prefer either newspapers or magazines or both to books."

J. H. Foster²⁶ has investigated the kinds of readers who choose given types of fiction. He includes some interesting tables of authors grouped by subject (satisfactory) and quality (doubtful). His concern for specific types in a subject in which it is most difficult to identify them is, I think, misguided and he gives little new information of value.

L. Carnovsky²⁷ finds that in all communities of the Chicago area relatively excellent use is made of the children's library as contrasted with the facilities for adults. "And if from the adult circulation we were to eliminate the admittedly trivial, it must be said that the important work of the library, as far as the distribution of books to adults is concerned, is limited to a very small element in the population."

F. M. Gardner²⁸ surveys some of the outstanding American contributions to research and pleads for English investigation. J. H. Wellard²⁹ explains the chief differences in the English and American approach to library problems and justifies the American experiment.

METHODS, STAFFING, ETC.

S. Holliday³⁰ discusses, in the form of general principles, those restrictions which he believes to hamper development and progress. He divides them into physical (due to lack of standardization in method, etc.), mental (due to shortcomings of the educational system, etc.) and moral (due to censorship, etc.). He thus covers to some extent, the ground of L. R. McColvin, whose article in the *Nineteenth Century and After* was noticed last year.

²⁶ An approach to fiction through the characteristics of its readers. *Ibid.* pp. 124-74.

²⁷ Book collections, library expenditure and circulations. *Ibid.* pp. 34-73.

²⁸ The enquiring librarian. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936. pp. 459-64.

²⁹ And what did I learn? *Ibid.* pp. 419-23.

³⁰ Restrictions. *L.A.* 29, 1936. pp. 33-42.

W. C. Pugsley³¹ provides a breezy review of modern improvements such as the abolition of wickets, fines, book-reservation charges, newsrooms, censorship and so on, shedding one by one all the mill-stones which drag us down to an untimely grave. J. Dent³², in a comparable article, also offers criticism and suggestions based on a consideration of more detailed points. Miss Jacka³³ provides a survey of office organization and routine and describes several unusual labour-saving methods and some additional public services, small but undoubtedly useful.

A lengthy article by F. Rider³⁴ enumerates the factors which necessitate cost accounting in business and discusses its application and use in libraries. He surveys the history of library cost accounting and describes a system which will answer such questions as the cost of accessioning, acquiring, cataloguing and circulating a book.

Ethel M. Fair³⁵ describes inventions of importance to business for the mechanization of equipment (*e.g.* the photo-electric cell and its many applications, newspapers on film, etc.) and suggests that their adaptation for library purposes be considered. Newspapers on film have attracted considerable publicity in the press during the year and a timely article by M. L. Raney³⁶ points out the practical advantages, economies and opportunities provided by this new method of filing. The same writer³⁷ edits a comprehensive symposium on the subject.

W. P. Tucker³⁸ provides a composite picture of the salary status of American librarians since 1922, using the published statistics of cities with a population in excess of 200,000. He comes to conclusions which also apply to English

³¹ Vestigial remains. *Ibid.* pp. 223-26.

³² Routine methods in the lending library. *Ibid.* pp. 248-53.

³³ The central library office. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936. opp. 335-38.

³⁴ Library cost accounting. *L.Q.* 6, 1936. pp. 331-81.

³⁵ Inventions and books—what of the future? *L.J.* 61, 1936. pp. 47-51.

³⁶ Films in the reproduction of library material. *A.L.A.* 30, 1936. pp. 80-88.

³⁷ Microphotography for libraries 1936. (*A.L.A.* \$2.50).

³⁸ Salaries of librarians and other professional workers. *W.B.*, 11, 1936. pp. 179-82.

libraries, namely that there has been a phenomenal increase in the number of library workers, that salaries are low when contrasted with other professions, that the post-war prosperity was a mirage to the librarian and, consolation, librarians suffered relatively small salary cuts during the depression.

W. Pollitt³⁹ pleads for a re-examination of the whole question of library staffing and justly claims that the profession has shown a tendency to over-emphasize the value of technical qualifications. He deplores recent developments which would place clerical assistants at library counters, since the trained and experienced assistant on lending library duty is now the exception but ought to be the rule. W. G. Fry⁴⁰ discusses the essential differences between the staffing problems of large and small libraries, covers the functions of the chief librarian and the administration department and digresses on specialization, conditions of service and qualifications. J. T. Gillett⁴¹, in a "severely practical" article, contends that staff training should commence on entering the profession and should be on the widest possible basis. He discusses the responsibilities of seniors to juniors and pleads for staff inter-changes, a staff manual, good professional libraries and oral tuition.

CONTACT WORK, EXTENSION WORK AND PUBLICITY

E. A. Savage⁴², through reminiscences of his own experiences, pleads for the librarian to give individual attention to his readers and follows up his argument for subject librarians, noted elsewhere in this chapter. W. R. McClelland⁴³ examines the technical considerations underlying the satisfying of the exact requirements of readers and discusses the provision of bibliographical tools, catalogue equipment, etc.

³⁹ Library staffs. *L.A.R.* 38, 1936. pp. 290-95.

⁴⁰ Library staffs: with special reference to large public library systems. *Ibid.* pp. 281-89.

⁴¹ The training of library staffs. *Ibid.* pp. 304-10.

⁴² Personal service in the Home Reading Library. *Ibid.* pp. 507-12.

⁴³ Guidance for readers. *L.A.* 29, 1936. pp. 193-98.

Co-operation with the Workers' Educational Association is, perhaps, the fundamental extension activity in England. A questionnaire circulated to members of classes has produced a mass of material which, selected and arranged, forms the basis of an important little book⁴⁴. From the professional point of view, the notes on students' difficulties in obtaining books must be most interesting. Poor library services are damned in no uncertain terms.

R. Staveley⁴⁵ criticizes school teaching methods, as he believes that these fail to produce a critical reading public, and suggests means of library publicity amongst urban clubs, parochial guilds, scout groups, dramatic societies, etc. The guiding principle should be "a definite work of reparation, a mass inducement to re-think a school-acquired attitude to books." It is thus interesting to note the publication of an English edition of "Find it yourself," by A. J. Hawkes⁴⁶. This now makes the well-known course in the use of books and libraries an eminently practical volume for English teachers and librarians and will assist in the construction of the library lesson for school visits.

M. Elsen⁴⁷ surveys publicity methods and makes the interesting suggestion that mothers should be sent a list of books on child welfare on the birth of a child. Co-operation between the Librarian and the Registrar of births is a new and attractive idea, but the results may be equivocal.

⁴⁴ Williams, W. E., and A. E. Heath. *Learn and live: the consumer's view of adult education.* (Methuen, 1936. 5/-).

⁴⁵ Library v. school. *L.A.* 29, 1936. pp. 11-14.

⁴⁶ Scripture, E. and M. R. Greer. *Find it yourself: a brief course in the use of books and libraries.* Extensively revised and enlarged for English use by A. J. Hawkes. 1936. (Philip 4/-).

⁴⁷ Library advertising. *BiLev.*, 21, 1936. pp. 35-50.

CHAPTER XI

LIBRARY PRACTICE

II. CATALOGUING

By MARGARET S. TAYLOR, M.A., F.L.A., *Lecturer in Cataloguing, University School of Librarianship, University College, W.C.1*

THE task of revising the Anglo-American Cataloguing Code is at last attracting notice. For four years the Catalog Code Revision Committee in America has been gathering material. Now, the Carnegie Corporation has given a grant of 15,000 dollars for two years so that further progress can be made. In "Code revisions—what do catalogers want?"¹ Julia Pettee surveys some of the problems which the Committee has been and still is considering. She stresses the fact that a usable, revised code is wanted immediately, not some perfect tool ten years hence. For that reason, rules for subject entry should not be attempted at present. Miss Pettee promises that there will be few, if any, radical changes. New rules will only be made where none actually exist to meet new problems, while the present rules will be greatly amplified, with more examples, and there will be a set of really good practical cataloguing definitions. She strongly urges co-operation with the British L.A. A meeting of their Code Revision Committee was held in September of last year and members were given certain sections to work upon². The American Committee has been especially concentrating upon Religious entries, Document entries, and Definitions, and the British agreed to do the same.

In 1936, the British Museum published a revised edition of their cataloguing rules³. The most drastic change

¹ *L.J.*, 59, 1936, pp. 306-08.

² *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, p. 584.

³ B.M. Rules for compiling the catalogues of printed books, maps and music in the British Museum. Revised edition, 1936. Reviewed in *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, p. 443.

is the abolition of the heading ACADEMIES. There is an addition to the rule for liturgies; Jewish service-books are to be entered under the heading JEWS with subheading SERVICE BOOKS. Although, in English and Dutch compound surnames, entry is usually to be made under the last half of the name, yet an exception is now made in the case of Dutch married women who have hyphenated surnames, and these are to be entered under the first part. Finally, there are additions to the abbreviations and the rules for transliterating names, as well as a few minor changes.

Julia Pettee has written a very interesting article on "The development of authorship entry and the formulation of authorship rules as found in the A.A. code."⁴ This is partly historical. She shows how the catalogue, first a finding list "irrespective of its relation to any other book," gradually developed into a tool which was a full descriptive guide to the contents of a library. Especially interesting is her account of the growth of corporate entry in America and England, contrasting this with the classing of such works as *anonymi* in German libraries. In the same periodical, H. E. Bliss has contributed an article "Some reflections on corporate names"⁵. In it he points out that we fail to apply the same standards of economy and convenience as are in general use. "So many names do not begin with significant or distinctive terms, but merely attributive terms or local or fanciful ones. The English Astronomical Society might be the Astronomical Society of England, or of Great Britain, or the British Astronomical Society, but it is the Royal Astronomical Society." Bliss is naturally against alphabetical order in arrangement of corporate names and proclaims his dislike of the dictionary catalogue. Florence B. Murray has written on "Canadian document catalogs and check-lists"⁶. Although chiefly concerned with the entry of Canadian, she discusses the choice of headings of details of entry for government publications in general

⁴ *L.Q.* 6, 1936, pp. 270-90.

⁵ *L.Q.* 6, 1936, pp. 263-69.

⁶ *L.Q.* 8, 1936, pp. 237-62.

from pages 251 to 255. The correct use of English aristocratic titles in cataloguing practice is explained by Frank M. Gardner in "Letters from an English cousin"⁷. Beginners usually find the courtesy title "Lord" difficult to understand. This is made clear but not similar details for the case of women entitled to use "Lady." Women are dealt with fully in the chapter on Difficult Names in Harriet D. Macpherson's book "Some practical problems in cataloguing"⁸. This is not a comprehensive general work. It aims rather at selecting advanced problems such as titles, foreign compound names, cataloguing books in the more familiar European languages, but there are also chapters on selective cataloguing, unit cards, subject headings, costs, and the cataloguer's reference tools.

A lengthy paper on alphabetical subject catalogue problems was given by F. Voogd at the IVe Congres voor Boeken Bibliotheekwezen⁹. The writer discusses inversion of compound subject-headings, comparing Dutch practice with Cutter's. In "Subject-headings for a scientific library"¹⁰ Helen K. Starr emphasises the difficulty of selecting right headings. One appropriate for the catalogue of a large collection may not be suitable for that of a medical library. She recommends the Index-Catalogue of the Surgeon-General's Library and the Quarterly Cumulative Index Medicus as the most important guides to be followed.

The Librarian of the Royal Geographical Society has written a useful and interesting paper on "The cataloguing and arrangement of maps,"¹¹ which was read at a meeting of the London and Home Counties Branch. In the case of maps, he considers the title is of greatest interest to users and therefore to cataloguers, "hence the title should, in my opinion, stand before that of the author." Other

⁷ *W.B.*, Oct. 1936.

⁸ Macpherson (Harriet D.). *Some practical problems in cataloguing*, xi, 131 pp., *A.L.A.*, 1936. Reviewed in *L.A.R.* p. 463, *L.Q.* pp. 431-34, *L.J.* p. 501.

⁹ *BiLev.*, 21, pp. 110-122.

¹⁰ *Bull. Med.L.A.* 1936, pp. 76-80.

¹¹ *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, pp. 98-104.

particulars to be included in the entry are author, scale, number of sheets, edition, etc. Mr. Crone lays great stress on the importance of date in maps, this item being even more necessary than in the case of a book. He also discusses regional headings and the L. of C. practice, subject entry, and general arrangement.

Seldom is anything written on the difficult subject of arranging entries in a catalogue, but J. A. Cranshaw has made an amusing attack on the rules of alphabetising in "A word or two"¹². He pokes fun at those who call a dictionary catalogue a "simple alphabetical arrangement of entries" and urges use of the spelling through method as being simpler and more consistent.

The chief subject discussed this year at the principal meeting of the A.L.A. Catalog section was the organisation of cataloguing departments. Three of the papers published in the "Cataloguers' and classifiers' year-book"¹³ for 1935 deal with this and there is a symposium of the views of other head cataloguers. Other papers are "Cataloguing costs" by Andrew D. Osborn, and "Form cards" by Esther Anne Smith, and there is the usual useful bibliography. At the beginning of the number, Florence M. Craig surveys the year-books of the section that have appeared so far, and laments that there is still a great dearth of published material on cataloguing and classification practical problems.

At the IVe Congres voor Boek- en Bibliotheekwezen, there was a discussion on the classified catalogue. Dr. Schauwers of Brussels also upheld the utility of "authority" catalogues, but Dr. Brummel considered them too expensive¹⁴. County librarians give their views on printed catalogues and class-lists in "Catalogues and other printed aids: a symposium"¹⁵. Mention must also be made of a brief article on "Cataloguing in theory and practice" by J. L.

¹² *L.A.* 29, 1936, pp. 259-263.

¹³ Cataloguers' and classifiers' year-book, No. 5, *A.L.A.* 1936.

¹⁴ *BiGi.*, 15, 1936, p. 35.

¹⁵ *L.R.* 5, 1936, pp. 354-58.

Thornton¹⁶. He opposes any economies likely to involve the omission of useful detail from catalogue entries or the abolition of fiction and juvenile catalogues, although he considers that books belonging to the two latter classes need only be catalogued very briefly. A solution of all, or most, difficulties appears to be some form of co-operative or centralised cataloguing.

Since January, 1936, the Kou Li Chung Yang T'U Shu Kuan (National Central Library) at Peiping has begun to print catalogue cards and now offers these for sale at the rate of one cent per card. Library of Congress methods for ordering and distribution have been followed.

The great Prussian Union catalogue, which was originally limited to the holdings of 18 libraries, has widened its scope and changed its name, as from volume 9 (the opening of the letter B). In future it is to be called *Der Deutscher Gesamtkatalog* and will include all German libraries open to the public, if they possess 100,000 volumes or more, and special libraries that have distinctive collections. The time limit is the same,—that is, the catalogue covers all works published before 1930¹⁷. The history and method of compilation of this great *Gesamtkatalog*, with shorter accounts of other efforts and facsimiles of specimen pages, are well described by L. N. Malcèlès in “L'oeuvre des catalogues collectifs imprimés à la ‘Preussische Staatsbibliothek’ de Berlin”¹⁸.

Much has been written on the progress of individual union catalogues, but the two most striking general articles are “Union catalogues, national and regional: their preparation and utilisation,” by Luxmoore Newcombe¹⁹ and “The union catalogue: its future,” by D. Coney²⁰. The latter is a report of the Washington Conference on union catalogues and contains a very interesting description of

¹⁶ *L.W.* 38, 1936, pp. 279-280.

¹⁷ *Z.f.B.* 53, pp. 74-81, 569-571.

¹⁸ *A.etB.* 1936, No. 1, pp. 35-65.

¹⁹ *A.S.L.I.B.* Report of proceedings of the 13th conference, 1936, pp. 65-76.

²⁰ *A.L.A. Bull.* 30, pp. 541-45.

the adaptation of microphotography on cinema film as a medium for transferring main entries from individual catalogues to the central one.

1936 has seen the issue of the first volume of a fourth series of the "Index-catalogue of the Library of the Surgeon-General's Office, United States Army (Army Medical Library)." There was some doubt as to whether the work was to be continued and it is fortunate that the means have been found to carry on this valuable tool. The Katalog over det Kgl. Biblioteks inkunabler, a Catalogue of incunabula in the Royal Library, Copenhagen, is still continuing and a fourth volume was published last year. There was also a "Catalogue of English newspapers and periodicals in the Bodleian Library, 1622-1800"²¹; a revision of the catalogue of books for adolescents, published by the L.A. and now renamed "Books for Youth"²²; and a fifth edition of the "Children's catalog," compiled by Siri Andrews²³; and many more.

Cataloguing is a difficult subject to teach since though students may learn rules and even be able to apply them intelligently, yet they fail to visualize the catalogue as a complete tool for a particular library. Lura C. Hutchinson, teacher of cataloguing in the Division of Library Instruction, University of Minnesota, in an article "Problems in the teaching of cataloguing"²⁴ shows how she attempted to make students do some "real cataloguing," instead of merely writing cards to illustrate certain forms of entry. The students worked in groups of four in making a complete catalogue of the books in the practical collection of the school. This account of method of working and the results achieved should be read by all who are endeavouring to instruct students in the art of cataloguing.

²¹ Milford (R. T.) and Sutherland (D. M.). Catalogue of English newspapers and periodicals in the Bodleian Library, 1622-1800. 184 p. O.U.F. 1936. Reviewed in *L.A.R.*, 1936, p. 587.

²² Library Association. Books for youth. General editor, W. C. Berwick Sayers. xix (1), 364 pp. 1936. Reviewed in *L.A.R.* 1936, p. 122.

²³ Andrews, Siri, compiler. Children's catalog, 5th edition revised. vii, 979 pp. H. W. Wilson Co., 1936.

²⁴ *L.J.* 61, pp. 899-900.

CHAPTER XI

LIBRARY PRACTICE

III. CLASSIFICATION

By W. C. BERWICK SAYERS, F.L.A., *Chief Librarian of
the Public Libraries, Croydon*

THE classification history of 1936 is undramatic and may be expressed as one of criticism. There was, however, the remarkable fact of a second edition, within a year of the first, of the scheme of Bliss¹, which is possibly a record in publishing for any scheme. The new edition is almost a reprint of the first, but makes certain revisions in religion, theology and ethics, besides minor corrections and clarifications. Interesting reviews of the scheme, by G. Akers² and Arnold H. Trotter³ respectively, have appeared, almost completely laudatory. Both agree that in any future choice of a classification this scheme must be considered, a conclusion with which I agree. It will not be possible, however, to give it an adequate consideration unless its compiler is encouraged, by the *practical* appreciation of librarians, to produce extended tables. It is to be hoped that he will be.

The Decimal Classification is represented by a new (5th) edition, supervised by Dorkas Fellows, of the Abridged Classification⁴, which has been issued in order to include the few changes in the numbers which were made in the 13th edition of the full classification, 1932. The Decimal Classification treatment of physical literature has been scrutinised carefully by Wilfred Ashworth⁵. Obviously the classification of wave mechanics, relativity and other

¹ Bliss, Henry Evelyn. A system of bibliographic classification. Ed. 2. New York. H. W. Wilson Co., 1936.

² *L.Q.*, 6, 1936. pp. 92-94.

³ *L.Q.*, 61, 1936. pp. 24-25.

⁴ Abridged Decimal Classification and Relative Index. Ed. 5. Lake Placid Club, New York. 1936. 196 pp. \$2.50.

⁵ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936. pp. 383-86.

general physical theories is almost impossible, or is at any rate a problem, at present, and Mr. Ashworth provides a suggestive little code. The third edition of the Science Museum's "Classification of Works on Pure and Applied Science"⁶, although it belongs to this year, was dealt with in our last volume (v. 8, p. 160) in anticipation.

Interesting as a suggestion is Knud Larsen's "Et Signatursystem for Fagbiblioteker"⁷ but its reference for us is to notation only. It is based upon a scheme, proposed, but not adopted, for the Halle University Library by the German philologist Karl Verner who was then on the library staff. The notation consists of letters used only in pronounceable combinations. Each class-mark consists of two words, one denoting the class-group and the other the individual book. The main class is denoted by one of the consonants b d f g h j k l m n p r s t w z (c and v being omitted as being pronounced in German like certain other letters) and the absence of a consonant can be used for a seventeenth main class. If necessary, still more main classes can be made by using such consonantal combinations as fl, fr, st, etc. Sub-division is made first by the use of one of the five vowels, and second by the use of another consonant excluding b, d, which used terminally in German sound like p, t. This first three-letter word is followed by a word made similarly for the book; and the method, we are told, provides for over 6,000,000 books, and even beyond that the words can be used polysyllabically.

An attractive discussion of "form" came from the pens of A. J. Philip, A. J. Hawkes, and J. Omerod⁸. Mr. Philip made the suggestion that forms are so many, so obvious in classification, that books might be arranged by form first and then by subject, a reversal of the usual procedure. Mr. Hawkes declared that this would cut away the elementary basis of real classification, and produced a good definition of classification:

⁶ Science Museum, London. Ed. 3. 132 pp. 5s. net.

⁷ *Bogens Verden*, 18, 1936. pp. 5-9. A German translation appeared in *Z. f. B.*, 53, 1936. pp. 369-72.

⁸ *Librarian*, 26, 1936. pp. 31-34.

Book (or Bibliographical) Classification is an arrangement of books by which the topics, subjects and sciences of which they treat are associated together on the shelves in a more or less logical sequence of diminishing intimacy of purport or purpose, or, *in the absence of subject significance, by the form in which they are cast*: the purpose of such arrangement being, primarily to facilitate the discovery of knowledge in literature, and secondarily to group together the books most advantageously consulted together.

Mr. Omerod finds the form divisions of the Decimal Classification rather a complicated superfluity except for Generalia and Literature. The discussion was taken up by H. E. Bliss later⁹.

Contributions of character to special classification were Mr. C. C. Barnard's scheme for medical libraries¹⁰, a description of which, owing to the rather late appearance of our last volume, was included in that (v. 8, p. 162). Classification of fiction occupies a place in a fine study by J. H. Foster¹¹. The attempt is made to give a qualitative classing as well as a descriptive one, and although such classifications are not usually successful they can be suggestive, and the study in which the one in question occurs is the most thorough I have seen.

An amusingly-useful study of variations in classifying is hidden by F. E. Cronshaw under the title "Bulletins and the Barrier"¹² which shows that various classifiers classify the same book in various places, and uses this to prove that the Decimal Classification is obsolete. It proves rather the old truth that classification is an art and not an exact science, and in all schemes variations will occur. Articles and parts of articles¹³ recur to the difficulty some students

⁹ *Librarian*, 26, 1937. pp. 128-30.

¹⁰ Classification of Medical Libraries. *Percy Lund Humphries*. 1936.

¹¹ *An Approach to Fiction through the characteristics of its readers*. *L.Q.*, 6, 1936. pp. 125-174.

¹² *L.At.*, 29, 1936. pp. 289-92.

¹³ *L.At.*, 29, 1936. pp. 276-87.

find in passing the L.A. examinations in this subject and, with some vehemence, lay the blame upon too faithful adherence to text-books. Clearly if a student limits his reading to the actual text of any text-book and does not at least follow up the supplementary reading actually indicated by it, the writer of the text-book should be spared such words as foolish, illogical, nonsensical and other adjectives—they may reveal rather than conceal the deficiencies of those who employ them.

CHAPTER XII

LIBRARY LAW

By ARTHUR R. HEWITT, *of the Middle Temple Library,
London*

LEGISLATION during the period under review¹ consists mainly of local Acts of Parliament but some public general statutes of interest may be noted. An Act to provide for the application of the Shops Acts to premises and places where the business of lending books or periodicals is carried on for purposes of gain was passed in July, 1936². When the bill dealing with this matter was before the House of Lords it contained a provision to the effect that this proposed amendment to the Shops Acts should not apply "to any libraries established under the provisions of the Public Libraries Acts" but these words were omitted and the clause re-drafted³ in the Commons to read "or to any library at which the business of lending books or periodicals is not carried on for purposes of gain" etc.

The Tithe Act, 1936⁴, provides that sealed copies of instruments of apportionment shall be under the charge and superintendence of the Master of the Rolls who may direct that any such copy shall be transferred to the Public Record Office or to any public library or historical or antiquarian society which may be willing to receive them (s. 36(2)).

The Local Government and Public Health Consolidation Committee⁵ issued a second interim Report and Draft of a Public Health bill⁶ in January, 1936. This draft bill included provisions similar to those contained in the Public

¹ 1934-1936; the last chapter on this subject was in *Y.W.* for 1933.

² 26 Geo. v and 1 Edw. viii, c. 28.

³ Lords Debates, xcix, cols. 743-5, 862-3.

⁴ 26 Geo. v and 1 Edw. viii, c. 43.

⁵ See *Y.W.* 1933, pp. 167-8.

⁶ H.M.S.O., Cmd. 5059 and Cmd. 5060.

Health Acts Amendment Act, 1907, relating to the use of library books by infected persons. The recommendations were adopted and included in the Public Health Act, passed in July 1936⁷, with the result that the provisions as to infected books (s. 155) are now of universal application, outside London.

Local Acts. The Glasgow Corporation Order Conf. Act, 1936⁸, enables the Corporation to borrow any moneys not exceeding £100,000 for the purposes of the Glasgow Libraries Acts, 1899 to 1930, and authorises the provision of a sinking fund for the re-payment of the loan. The Brighton Corporation Act, 1936⁹, applies the Libraries Offences Act, 1898, to any library, newsroom, museum or art gallery provided in the borough and empowers the Corporation to make bye-laws enabling the removal of persons from such premises committing an offence under that Act. The borough libraries were not established under the Public Libraries Acts, and the Libraries Offences Act, therefore, did not apply.

The provision of 'picture funds' or 'art funds' was authorised by local Acts in respect of Darlington in 1934¹⁰; Gloucester¹¹ and Harrogate¹² in 1935; and Brighton¹³ and Wolverhampton¹⁴ in 1936. Under the Authority of these Acts funds may be established to provide for the purchase of pictures, sculptures or other objects of art or interest which it is deemed desirable to acquire for exhibition in and as additions to a library, art gallery or museum. In the case of Darlington, Gloucester and Brighton the amount to be set aside must not exceed £200 annually and the fund must not exceed the sum of £5,000. In Harrogate the sums are £100 and £2,000 and in Wolverhampton a rate of one-fifth of a penny in the £ and £5,000, respectively.

⁷ 26 Geo. v and 1 Edw. viii, c. 49.

⁸ *Ibid.*, ch. xxi, ss. 7 and 8.

⁹ *Ibid.*, ch. lxvii, s. 31.

¹⁰ 24 and 25 Geo. v, ch. xxxviii, s. 44.

¹¹ 25 and 26 Geo. v, ch. lxxxvii, s. 116.

¹² *Ibid.*, ch. cvii, s. 120.

¹³ 26 Geo. v and 1 Edw. viii, ch. lxvii, s. 23.

¹⁴ *Ibid.*, ch. cxi, s. 98.

The provision of lecture rooms and the giving of lectures was authorised in Gloucester¹⁵, Beckenham¹⁶, Harrogate¹⁷, Croydon¹⁸, and Sunderland¹⁹ in 1935, and in the County of London²⁰, Brentford and Chiswick²¹, Merton and Morden²², and Hornchurch²³ in 1936. In the case of Gloucester, Beckenham, Brentford, Merton and Hornchurch the provision of art exhibition rooms and the holding of art exhibitions was also authorised.

Adoption. The Acts were adopted by Rhondda and Hythe, by the Berkshire County Council in respect of New Windsor and by the Staffordshire County Council in respect of 13 urban districts in the county in 1933. The urban districts of Audenshaw and Kids Grove and Parish of Pleasley relinquished their powers and duties under the Acts to their respective county councils in 1933²⁴ as did East Retford and the parish of Ibstock in 1934²⁵. The Acts were also adopted by Barnes, Sutton and Cheam, Beddington and Wallington, Carshalton and Coulsdon and Purley after rescission by the Surrey County Council, and by Redcar and Whitby, while Tonbridge and Upholland relinquished their powers to the County Councils of Kent and Lancashire respectively²⁶. The County Councils of Northumberland and the North Riding of Yorkshire also adopted the Acts for Longbenton and Eston respectively²⁷.

British Museum. Questions were asked in the House of Commons as to the possibility of extending the opening hours of the British Museum Reading Room and as to the additional cost of such a step²⁸. In reply the figures

¹⁵ 25 and 26 Geo. v, ch. lxxxvii, s. 128, limit £100 per annum.

¹⁶ *Ibid.*, ch. xcvi, s. 103, £100.

¹⁷ *Ibid.*, ch. cvii, s. 137, £200.

¹⁸ *Ibid.*, ch. cix, s. 49, £350.

¹⁹ *Ibid.*, ch. cxxv, s. 280, £300.

²⁰ 26 Geo. v and 1 Edw. viii, ch. lx, s. 51, no limit.

²¹ *Ibid.*, ch. lxiii, s. 111, £100.

²² *Ibid.*, ch. cxv, s. 149, £100.

²³ *Ibid.*, ch. cxxiii, s. 143, £100.

²⁴ Education in 1933, H.M.S.O., Cmd. 4631.

²⁵ Education in 1934, H.M.S.O., Cmd. 4968.

²⁶ Education in 1935, H.M.S.O., Cmd. 5290.

²⁷ *Ibid.*

²⁸ House of Commons Debates, ccxciii, col. 666; cccvii, col. 1153.

mentioned were £7,500 per annum with a restricted service under present conditions or, with additional staff of about 100, £14,000. No hope was held out of any additional expenditure being incurred for the purpose. A further question was asked as to the possibility of adopting the suggestion contained in the Report of the Public Libraries Committee, 1927, relating to the issue of catalogue cards by the British Museum to subscribers²⁹. In reply it was stated that it has not been practicable to adopt that suggestion.

Revised regulations relating to publications not required to be delivered to the British Museum under the provisions of the Copyright Act, 1911, dated October 12, 1932, were issued in 1935³⁰.

Loans. The loans authorised by the Minister in 1933-34 amounted to £87,240³¹, in 1934-35 to £133,591³², and in 1935-36 to £317,892³³. Lists of the loans sanctioned during the period April 1, 1933, to December 31, 1935, appear in the *L.A. Annual Reports* for the years 1933 (p. 5R), 1934 (p. 3R), and 1935 (p. 4R). Reports of the Public Works Loan Commissioners issued in 1934 and 1935 show that loans by the Commissioners for library and museum purposes amounted to £10,823 in 1932-33 and £1,372 in 1933-34. Apparently no loans were made during 1934-35³⁴. "The Statistical Abstracts for the United Kingdom" to 1933, to 1934 and to 1935, contain useful financial statistics relating to libraries and museums³⁵. Revised regulations for Grants to Local Museums and Art Galleries in aid of the purchase of works and objects of art were issued by the Board of Education to take the place of the regulations of 1909 and 1913³⁶.

Byelaws and Rules and Regulations. This matter is dealt

²⁹ *Ibid.*, cccxvii, col. 889.

³⁰ S.R. and O. 1935, No. 278.

³¹ 15th Report of the Ministry of Health, 1933-34, H.M.S.O., Cmd. 4664.

³² *Ibid.*, 16th Report, 1934-35, Cmd. 4978.

³³ *Ibid.*, 17th Report, 1935-36, Cmd. 5287.

³⁴ H. of C. Papers, 7, 1934; 16, 1935; 30, 1936.

³⁵ Issued in 1935, 1936 and 1937 respectively, H.M.S.O., Cmd. 4801, pp. 198-210; Cmd. 5144, pp. 214-226; Cmd. 5353, pp. 214-226.

³⁶ S. R. and O. 1934, No. 364.

with in two articles in the *L.W.*³⁷. The first, by W. G. Fry, is concerned with the question of fines and over-due books, while the second contribution, by R. L. W. Collison, is devoted chiefly to the essential items necessary in producing a model set of Rules and Regulations.

In the "Counties Libraries Manual"³⁸ a chapter is devoted to the law and procedure relating to the making of byelaws, rules and regulations by county authorities, and it includes a model set of Byelaws and a suggested set of Rules and Regulations. An opinion expressed in the Manual on the difference between Byelaws and Regulations and on the enforcement of the latter is of particular interest.

Consolidation. The question of consolidation of the law relating to public libraries has continued to receive attention both in England and Scotland during the period under review. The *Library Association* Legislation Committee has devoted much time to the consideration of the suggested Consolidating and Amending Draft Bill specially prepared by the present writer. A draft bill to amend the law in Scotland and to provide for regional co-operation was also prepared by a joint committee of representatives of Local Authorities and of the *Scottish Library Association*³⁹.

"The Library of the Future" by B. M. Headicar⁴⁰ contains a chapter on 'Legislation and Control,' in which the recommendations on consolidation contained in the Report of the Public Libraries Committee, 1927, are discussed.

Literature. "General Law for librarians, curators and those in charge of institutions to which the public have access," by N. C. W. Edge⁴¹ is a small work dealing with aspects of the law not directly concerned with the maintenance of public libraries but with such subjects as meetings, indecent literature, treasure trove, nuisance, insurance and burglary.

³⁷ *L.W.* 1936, 39, pp. 107-8, 110-1.

³⁸ *L.A.* 1935, ch. xi, pp. 131-140.

³⁹ See also *L.A.R.* 37, 1935, p. 285.

⁴⁰ *G. Allen and Unwin*, pp. 122, 1936.

⁴¹ *Philip*, Gravesend, pp. 84, 1934.

by C. B. Joeckel⁴⁷ is a work dealing with the legal forms and types of government organisation of the public library and is a comparative study of the legal aspect of the establishment and control of libraries throughout the United States. Among other matters the author reviews the development of legislation affecting public libraries from the earliest statute to the year 1934. The legal basis of the public library receives particular attention, especially relationships with the Federal Government, the State and the City.

"State Aid and Library Planning in Ohio," by J. C. Foutts⁴⁸, deals chiefly with a state-wide survey of library facilities in Ohio which resulted in the preparation and passing of a bill through the legislature authorising a \$100,000 appropriation for State aid.

"A Digest of Library Legislation, 1932 and 1933," by F. J. Tolman⁴⁹, is, as its title suggests, a digest of the library laws passed by the various State legislatures during the period covered, the laws being grouped under such subject headings as 'tax limitations and budget review,' 'limitation of library tax,' 'public libraries,' 'county libraries,' 'library appropriations,' etc. It forms part of the annual report of the *A.L.A.* Committee on Legislation, 1933.

The place of the public library in the governmental system and the relationship between libraries and the government, both municipal, are reviewed in two contributions in the *L.J.*, 1934, namely, "Trends in Government that affect County and Regional Libraries," by L. D. Fyan⁵⁰ and "The library and its relation to Government in the South," by C. B. Joeckel⁵¹. The latter writer also reviews the "Federal Relations to Libraries" in a statement made before the Council of the *A.L.A.*⁵² in which he discusses the question of a Federal Library Agency and

⁴⁷ *Univ. of Chicago Press (C.U.P.)*, pp. xix, 393, 1935.

⁴⁸ *L.J.*, 1936, 61, pp. 18-21.

⁴⁹ *Ibid.*, 1934, 59, pp. 289-95.

⁵⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 18-22.

⁵¹ *Ibid.*, pp. 910-5.

⁵² The statement appears in the *L.J.*, 1935, 60, pp. 99-101.

Federal aid for libraries. These two aspects of the question are further dealt with in a series of "Answers to questions on Federal participation in Library Development," by C. H. Compton in the *L.J.*, 1935⁵³.

"Public Library Systems in Australia," by John Metcalfe⁵⁴ is an historical survey of the provision and maintenance of public libraries throughout that Dominion in which are reviewed the various Acts of the Legislatures dealing with the growth of the library service. A most useful table of legislation in force is appended.

Miscellaneous. Amendment of the libel laws is discussed in correspondence addressed to the *L.A.R.*⁵⁵ by the British section of the International Association of Writers.

"Libel in Books" is a short contribution to the *L.R.*⁵⁶ in which the present writer discusses the position in which libraries, containing books of a libellous nature, are placed.

The "Report of the Board of Education," 1935⁵⁷, contains an informative outline of the growth of the public library service, its special features, its relationship to government departments, and the position it now occupies. The "Report" for 1934⁵⁸ contains information relating to library work for children, adolescents and adult students and outlines, generally, the connection of library work with the work of students and classes. Similar information is to be found in the "Report" for 1935⁵⁹ which also refers to the work of the Carnegie U. K. Trust, in the field of libraries and museums.

The "Report of the Committee of Council on Education in Scotland" for 1933⁶⁰ contains information and statistics as to the library schemes of county authorities in Scotland. It also discusses double rating in burghs and the situation caused by the repeal of the proviso to s. 5 of the Education

⁵³ *L.J.* 1935, 60, pp. 365-7.

⁵⁴ *L.A.R.*, 36, 1934, pp. 314-21, 367-74.

⁵⁵ *Ibid.*, 38, 1936, pp. 488-9.

⁵⁶ Winter no., 1935, pp. 162-5.

⁵⁷ June 1934, *H.M.S.O.*, Cmd. 4631.

⁵⁸ July, 1935, Cmd. 4968.

⁵⁹ Oct. 1936, Cmd. 5290.

⁶⁰ May, 1934, Cmd. 4601.

Act, 1918, by the Local Government (Scotland) Act, 1929.

Attention is drawn to the possible contravention of the Betting and Lotteries Act, 1934, by the exhibition in news-rooms of newspapers advertising results of lotteries, in the *L.A.R.*, 1935⁶¹.

An extract from the *Indian Library Journal*⁶² Report of the ninth All-India Library Congress, appearing in the *L.A.R.*⁶³, notes, among other matters, the result of the efforts to secure library legislation in Bengal.

Dominions, Colonies, America and Foreign Countries. Lack of space prevents the inclusion of a summary of this legislation in the present volume.

⁶¹ 37, p. 198.

⁶² 1935, No. 4, January.

⁶³ 37, 1935, pp. 196-8.

CHAPTER XIII

BOOK PRODUCTION

I. PRINTING AND ILLUSTRATION

By H. WOODBINE, A.L.A., *Chief Assistant, The Birmingham Public Libraries*

FINE PRINTING

PROBABLY the finest work issued in 1936 was "Old Spain,"¹ with drawings by Muirhead Bone and descriptions by Gertrude Bone. It is a magnificent piece of printing by the Oxford University Press, with most beautiful illustrations in collotype some of which are in colour. The type is 18 point monotype Baskerville, the paper mould made, and the binding specially selected pigskin. Each subscriber also received two drypoints, mounted, signed, and enclosed in a case. Altogether a wonderful piece of book production, but far out of reach of most collectors, not to mention libraries. A matter of "only look and pass by."

The Gregynog Press book of the year was Philemon Holland's translation of Xenophon's "Cyrupaedia"². This work is printed on Batchelor hand made paper and set in monotype Poliphilus. The marginal notes are printed in red, and there are some delightful floriated initials designed by Loyd Haberly and hand coloured in red and green. The binding is a dark brown niger morocco,

¹ Old Spain. Drawings by Muirhead Bone. Descriptions by Gertrude Bone. 2 vols. 120 full page plates, 34 half page pictures, 27 tail pieces. Limited edition 265 copies. London. Macmillan. 1936. 100 guineas.

In addition two drypoints of Spanish subjects are to be given to each subscriber.

² Cyrupaedia—written in Greeke by the sage Xenophon. Translated —by Philemon Holland. Limited edition 150 copies. Newtown. Gregynog Press. 1936. 6 guineas. pp. [6], xviii, 321, [3].

with arabesques in gold, and with green and red inlays at the corners and sides, a binding perhaps a little over ornate, but the work is otherwise a beautiful example of book production by this famous press. Professor Garrod in reviewing it in *The Observer* for December 13th, 1936, criticised adversely the accuracy with which the text of the edition of 1632 is reproduced.

The Nonesuch Press published during the year a bibliography³ of the first hundred volumes for which it has been responsible. In variety they probably exceed the issues of any other press, and it would probably also be true to say that their influence on printing generally has exceeded that of the works issued by any other press since the Kelm-scott. Yet the Nonesuch Press normally plans and publishes but does not print, its printing being done by various famous firms.

In the bibliography now issued there is a critical note on each work, and in the illustrative and inset pages there is a feast of material for the student of typography. Articles by Symon, and by Meynell, tell the story of the growth and development of the press. Altogether a book on printing for every library that can afford it. One cannot have everything, but it seems unfortunate that collations are not given, and Eric Gill's portrait of Francis Meynell does not appear to be recorded as part of the book.

The Golden Cockerel Press has also issued a bibliography⁴ of its publications, recording 112 items as issued since it first commenced operations in 1921. Amongst the artists who have worked for this press are Eric Gill, Eric Ravilious,

³ Symons, A. J. A., Flower, D., and Meynell, F. *The Nonesuch Century*. An appraisal, a personal note, and a bibliography of the first hundred books issued by the Press 1923-1934. Limited edition 750 copies. London. *Nonesuch Press*. 2 guineas.

pp [4], xii, 2, Frontis, 3-80, Devices 3 leaves, Bindings 7 leaves, Text and title pages 28 leaves, Illustrations and inset pages 48 leaves. All except first and last leaves of Illustrations, etc. with mounted examples. [4].

⁴ Chanticleer : a Bibliography of the Golden Cockerel Press. April 1921—August 1936. Introduction by H. Wolfe. Foreword and notes by the partners. London. *Golden Cockerel Press*. 1937. 2/6 and One guinea. pp. 48. First twelve not numbered.

Robert Gibbings and John and Paul Nash. The first volume of "The Log of the Bounty,"⁵ also from the press is a very beautifully printed book, with wood engravings by Lynton Lamb. It is a large work and a larger type than usual has been used in its printing.

Last year's notes recorded the "Oxford Lectern Bible". An account⁶ of the project has been published by the Monotype Corporation and is well worth the attention of those interested in that masterpiece of the great American typographer Bruce Rogers.

PRACTICAL PRINTING

During 1936 several small works of considerable interest appeared. Morison's "First principles of typography"⁷ is a reprint of a very notable article which originally formed part of *The Fleuron* No. 7, 1930. Its few pages constitute a masterly summary of those laws which govern the typography of the book. So much so that one printer has referred to this little work as "The pocket testament of the craft." Eric Gill's "Essay on typography"⁸ has appeared in a second edition, having been originally published as far back as 1931. It is a stimulating little work, part typography, and part the author's creed of industrial ethics.

From the point of view of the librarian "Type for print"⁹ by D. Thomas is a most helpful piece of practical work, giving just those details he needs to know. Its synopsis of type faces is particularly useful. It was a mistake how-

⁵ The Log of the Bounty. Being Lieutenant Bligh's log of the proceedings of His Majesty's armed vessel Bounty in a voyage to the South Seas, etc. Limited edition 300 copies. London. *Golden Cockerel Press*. 6 guineas the two volumes.

Vol. I. 1936. pp. [4], 435, [1]: Vol. II. Not yet issued.

⁶ Rogers, Bruce. An Account of the making of the Oxford Lectern Bible. Oxford. Printed by John Johnson at the University Press for the Monotype Corporation, London. 1936.

pp. 16. 4 pp. type specimens between pp. 8 and 9. Paper Covers.
⁷ Morison, S. First principles of typography. *Cambridge University Press*. 1936. 2/6. pp. [6], 29, [1].

⁸ Gill, E. Essay on typography. Second Edition. London. *Sheed and Ward*. 1936. 5/-. pp. [8], 133, [3].

⁹ Thomas, D. Type for print. London. *Joseph Whitaker & Sons*. 1936. 2/6. pp. 1-124. 3 pp. advt. [1]. This includes end papers. Stiff covers.

ever to issue the book with so unhappy a cover, and another to include the end papers in its pagination.

The sixth of the Dent Memorial Lectures, De la Mare's "A Publisher on Book Production"¹⁰ is more than up to the high standard of its predecessors, yet is only what might be expected from one who is responsible for the design and production of the books issued by Messrs. Faber and Faber. Mr. De la Mare considers that the publisher must "know what he wants done and how to tell other people the way to do it." One could add, "and so must the librarian." In his lecture he tells his method of work. There is a comment on book jackets which some librarians might take to heart, and another, which badly needed making, on the fashion for pages of illustrations with no margin. Perhaps the most interesting however is his statement that, by times, he plans "the deliberate slowing down of the tempo of reading certain kinds of books."

The last of the small works is Pintress's "Buying print,"¹¹ and it is quite a helpful little book to anyone concerned in such an operation. It is not good book making however for the verso of the index to carry a page of advertisement.

Hoch's "Handbook"¹² is an extremely competent practical work dealing with the pressman's methods of meeting and overcoming day by day difficulties. The author is a well known American expert on his subject.

Another American work is Mc Murtrie's "History of printing in the United States"¹³. In 1810 Isaiah Thomas produced a "History of printing in America," and a second edition of his work appeared in 1874. Now Mc Murtrie

¹⁰ De la Mare, R. A Publisher on book production. The Sixth Dent Memorial Lecture. With a foreword by Hugh R. Dent. London. *J. M. Dent & Sons Ltd.* 1936. 1/6. pp. 1-46. [2].

¹¹ Pintress, V. G. Buying print: for librarians, curators and those engaged in book business. Gravesend. *A. J. Philip.* 1936. 6/6. pp. 119, 7 advts. [2].

¹² Hoch, F. W. Handbook for pressmen. New York. *F. W. Hoch Associates.* 1936. \$3. pp. xii, 236, [4].

¹³ Mc Murtrie, D. C. History of printing in the United States. Vol. II. Middle and South Atlantic States. New York. *R. W. Bowker Co.* 1936. \$6 per volume. To be completed in four volumes. Vol. II. pp. xxviii, 462, [2]. Maps on end papers.

is attempting a further survey of the subject. Much of his material is entirely new, being based on documents in domestic and foreign archives. The work is to be completed in four volumes and should, for some time, form the standard account of its subject. So far volume ii only has appeared.

ILLUSTRATIONS

There is a chapter on book illustration in Clare Leighton's "Wood Engraving of the 1930's"¹⁴ in which she states that "The perfect book illustrator is Eric Gill." It is a particularly interesting chapter and the account of the U.S.S.R. school of wood engraving is most welcome.

• In wood engraving one of the most delightful picture books is Bates' "Through the Woods"¹⁵ with its 73 examples of the art by Agnes Miller Parker. Some of the illustrations show a curiously abrupt contrast between black and white which is rather intriguing.

Wheeler's "Modern painters and sculptors as illustrators"¹⁶ appeals more by its introduction than by the examples of illustration selected. The comment that "New English work tends towards pastiche and timid decorative effects" would appear to need more substantiation.

A competent small practical work for those actually engaged in the art is Cartwright's "Notes on the rotary photogravure process"¹⁷. It is an enlarged edition of a book originally written by W. M. Rouse. The plates illustrating defects are particularly illuminating.

The 4th edition of Beedham's "Wood engraving"¹⁸

¹⁴ Leighton, C. Wood engraving of the 1930's. London. *Studio Ltd.* 1936. 10/6. pp. 192.

¹⁵ Bates, H. E. Through the woods, etc. With 73 engravings on wood by Agnes Miller Parker. London. *Gollancz.* 1936. 10/6. pp. 142, [2].

¹⁶ Wheeler, M. ed. Modern painters and sculptors as illustrators. New York. *Museum of Modern Art.* 1936. 8/6. pp. 116.

¹⁷ Cartwright, H. M. Notes on the rotary photogravure process. London. *Autotype Company Ltd.* 1936. pp. 40. 8 plates illustrating defects.

¹⁸ Beedham, R. J. Wood engraving. With an introduction and appendix by Eric Gill. Ditchling. *Pepler and Sewell. St. Dominic's Press.* 1935. 5/- pp. [6], viii, 40, [4], [6] blank.

appeared just too late for inclusion last year, but it is so good a small practical handbook for the beginner that I mention it now. It describes in detail the tools and materials required and the method of using them.

PAPER

Reminding us that the cost of the paper amounts to about 30 per cent of the cost of most printing jobs W. B. Wheelwright, editor of the *Paper and Printing Digest*, has produced a useful work on printing papers.¹⁹ In it he discusses the relation of paper to printing, gives details on the physical qualities and the methods of judging paper, and is particularly good on antidotes for typical press room troubles. His work is well illustrated.

Labarre's "Dictionary"²⁰ actually appeared in the first few days of 1937. It gives French, German, Dutch, and Italian equivalents for English terms, and has a good short historical account of paper and paper making pp. 37-82.

A number of important works on paper making in France has been issued in the last few years. Two more, neither of which it has been my fortune to see, came out in 1936. Nicolai's work,²¹ gives in Vol. 2, illustrations of some 1000 watermarks, and the edition is limited to 500 copies. The work by Hofman²² would appear to be of standing as a general history.

The great American authority on paper, Dard Hunter has, in continuation of his researches, issued a work on "Paper making in southern Siam"²³.

¹⁹ Wheelwright, W. B. *Printing papers* : with a foreword by Otto G. Kress. *University of Chicago Press*. 1936. \$2. pp. xiv, 134.

²⁰ Labarre, E. J. *A Dictionary of paper and paper-making terms with equivalents in French, German, Dutch, and Italian*. Amsterdam. *N. V. Swets & Zeitlinger*. 1937. fl. 9.50. pp. [4], 315, [1]. 45 specimens each double sheets except 6, 23-25, and 42-45. 8 leaves advts.

²¹ Nicolai, A. *Histoire des Moulins à Papier du Sud Ouest de la France 1300-1800*. 2 vols. Bordeaux. *Delmas*. 1936. Limited edition 500 copies.

²² Hofman, C. *Traité pratique de la fabrication du papier. Contribution à l'histoire de la papeterie en France*. 4 vols. Paris. *Revue des Alpes*. 1936 ?

²³ Hunter, D. *Paper making in southern Siam*. *Mountain House Press*. 1936.

PERIODICALS

From the point of view of the librarian interested in typography and illustration each number of *Signature*²⁴ seems better than the last. During 1936 Barnett Freedman has written on Lithography, and this article was followed by one on the author; there has appeared a scholarly essay by A. F. Johnson on that "worst period in the history of English printing" the seventeenth century; while a contribution by H. Miles on Edward Bawden is notable for the illustrations chosen; and an article by P. Beaujon on "Progress in Bible production" includes an account of the Nederlandsche Bijbel Compagnie productions.

Another article by A. F. Johnson on the "Sources of roman and italic types used by English printers in the 16th century" will be found in the *Library* for June.

Three numbers of the *British Printer*²⁵ contain a competently illustrated series of articles by J. Fowle-Fromings on "How can type faces vary?"

Guthrie's *Book Craftsman* appears to have ceased publication. The Winter 1935 number contained proposals for the printing of bi-annual numbers in black and colours by various methods. These numbers were to be sold at the price of 10s. each but nothing seems to have materialised from the proposals.

Two new periodicals have come into existence, *Maso Finiguerra*²⁶, an interesting Italian venture which is to appear every four months, and *Typography*²⁷, a new quarterly. No. 1 of this latter sold out almost at once. If it is proposed to continue issuing it in the format of No. 2 it will be most unsatisfactory for binding though it is well worth preserving.

²⁴ *Signature*. A quadrimestrial of Typography and Graphic Arts. Edited by Oliver Simon. London. 37, Museum Street. 3/- each number.

²⁵ *The British Printer*. London. *British Printer Co.* Quarterly 1/6. July, pp. 5-7. Sept. pp. 73-75. Nov. pp. 117-120.

²⁶ *Maso Finiguerra*. *Revista della stampa incisa e del libro illustrato*. Fondata e diretta da Lamberto Donati. To appear every four months in numbers of about 80 pp. each. Annual subscription 60 liras.

²⁷ *Typography*. London. *Shenval Press*. Quarterly 2/-.

*Penrose's Annual*²⁸ for 1936 more than kept to the high standard of excellence of this publication. The Editor's review provides a most valuable summary of progress during the year, and other notable articles are those on the Merrymount Press, Book Jacket Design, Goudy, and Early Lithography in England.

*Fine Prints of the Year*²⁹ is now edited by Dr. Campbell Dodgson, the ideal expert for such a post. The selection of prints is all one could expect it to be and should be studied in conjunction with the editor's most able commentary.

PRINTING FOR LIBRARIES

There is a steady improvement in the quality of the work for libraries year by year and it seems desirable that it should become a practice to collect and study the better examples issued.

A really excellent piece of work is the "List of Books on Printing and the Allied Trades" issued by the Bristol Public Library. The typography, style, arrangement, paper, and the selection of books, all of the highest standard.

Almost equal to it is "Crafts for Leisure" issued by the same authority.

Another very capable piece of work is the "List of Books on Geography and Geology" issued by Southport.

Sheffield has produced "A Guide to the Fairbank collection of Maps" and its biographical list "Rudyard Kipling" also deserves mention.

The Oldham "List of Lectures, Plays, etc." is a stylish small piece of work and a well produced list is Bethnal Green's "Books of 1935."

In Bulletins those of Coventry, Rugby, Southport and

²⁸ The Penrose Annual. Review of the Graphic Arts. Edited by R. B. Fishenden. Vol. 38. London. *Lund Humphries Ltd.* 1936. 10/- pp. xii, 164, 2 leaves list of illus., 44 pp. advts. Frontispiece and plates in and following text as in lists at beginning and end of text. Plates preceding and in advertisements as in list on pp. 42-3 of advertisements. Advertisements on end papers.

²⁹ Dodgson, C. ed. *Fine Prints of the year.* London. *Halton and Company Ltd.* 1936. 25/- pp. vi, 42. 100 plates. viii pp. advts.

Nottingham are amongst the best I have seen so far as format and typography are concerned.

In this commentary on Printing for Libraries I am very conscious of the fact that there are serious sins of omission. It only includes those items which have come under my notice, and it is more than probable that much work of equal excellence has gone unmentioned, not having come my way.

II. BOOKBINDING

(A) MATERIALS & METHODS

By SIDNEY HORROCKS, A.L.A., *Stack Superintendent,
Central Library, Manchester*

“ACTIONS speak louder than words.” It is therefore fitting that this account of the year’s bookbinding literature should begin with Douglas Cockerell’s articles on the binding of the *Codex Sinaiticus*¹. Public interest in the acquisition of this ancient manuscript of 347 vellum leaves was raised to a high pitch²; interest in its restoration and preservation appears to have been limited to librarians and bookbinders. Sewn on six double hempen cords of great strength with thick unbleached linen thread ; cords frayed out, laced and pegged into the boards of English oak ; covered with white goatskin tawed with alum and salt, the work took five months to complete. The finishing is very simple, the blind lines on each side of the bands being carried over to form an interlacing design, Coptic in origin, in blind tooling on the leather of the sides.

As pendants to Mr. Cockerell’s account, there are two shorter notes, by Arundell Esdaile² and J. B. Corderoy³, both of which are illustrated.

MATERIALS

Leather. The most important publication of the year under this heading was the second interim report on “*The Causes and Prevention of Decay of Bookbinding Leather*,” drawn up by a committee composed of librarians, leather manufacturers and bookbinders. The report, issued by

¹ *B.M. Quarterly*, 10, 1935-6, pp. 180-2, pl. liii. *Librarian and Book World*, 25, 1936, p. 140.

² *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 76, 115 (correction) 483-4.

³ *British and Colonial Printer and Stationer*, 118, 1936, pp. 626-8.

the Printing Industry Research Association and the British Leather Manufacturers' Research Association, confirmed the opinion expressed by previous investigations that the absorption of sulphuric acid from polluted atmospheres is the chief contributory factor to the decay of modern bookbinding leathers. That bookbinding leathers should absorb sulphuric acid is due to the absence of the protective salts naturally present in crust leathers. Laboratory tests showed that vegetable tanned leathers when treated with certain salts (sodium citrate or sodium lactate) would withstand the action of sulphuric acid. It was proposed that all vegetable tanned leathers which resist this test, either by reason of their inherent properties or because of the addition of the approved salts, should be stamped "Guaranteed to resist P.I.R.A. Test." A list of leather manufacturers who are prepared to supply leather in accordance with the Committee's recommendations is appended to the report.

A practical test of the durability of certain leathers and their reactions to different dressings has been made in the New York Public Library⁴. During 1925, a fifteen-volume edition of the Century Dictionary was bound, four leathers (Persian Morocco, Turkey Morocco, Oasis Morocco and Levant Morocco) and buckram being used. Some of the volumes were left untreated, whilst others were given dressings of either neatsfoot oil, castor oil, lanolin, vaseline, or neatsfoot combined with castor oil. After ten years of hard wear in the main Reading Room, it was found that the volumes bound in Levant and Turkey Morocco, especially those treated with neatsfoot oil, had stood the test well.

General re-statements of the characteristics and uses of bookbinding leathers, by J. A. Esler, appeared in the *Librarian and Book World*⁵.

Cloth. On the methods of book-cloth production, the reticence of manufacturers has been reflected in the library

⁴ *New York Public Library Bull.*, 40, 1936, pp. 97-100.

⁵ *Librarian and Book World*, 25, 1936, p. 322; 26, 1936, pp. 46-7.

press by an almost complete avoidance of the subject. The silence has been broken by J. A. Esler⁶ and G. Macdougall⁷. The former includes the subject in a series of articles on bookbinding materials and in non-technical language briefly outlines the processes of manufacture. Mr. Macdougall covers the same field in a lecture delivered to bookbinding students at the London School of Printing.

Steps towards the standardization of qualities of book-cloths have been taken in America by the United States Department of Commerce through the National Bureau of Standards. Producers, distributors and users of book-cloth were invited to signify their acceptance of certain standards set up by the Bureau⁸. With the exception of the section directly concerned with library binding, the industry signified its approval. In their protest, the Library Binding Institute and the A.L.A. objected to the standard on the grounds of incompleteness⁹. The Bureau agreed that the title should be modified so that it should be quite clear that the standard did not apply to cloths for library binding and that these should be the subject of further enquiry.

Flexwood. An addition to the ranks of covering materials has been made during the year. Flexwood is a genuine wood surface made suitable for bookbinding purposes by a patent flexing process¹⁰. Briefly, flexwood is a veneer lined with canvas. Its originators claim that it is practically imperishable, that it will take gold tooling and will admit of varied inlaid designs in woods of natural colour.

Boards. A detailed analysis of the causes of warped boards is contributed to the *London School of Printing Year Book* by G. Macdougall¹¹. As an introduction to the major theme, he examined the processes employed in the production of paper, boards and cloth. Distortion may be caused

⁶ *Librarian and Book World*, 25, 1936, pp. 52-4.

⁷ *London School of Printing Year Book*, 1935-36, pp. 107-20.

⁸ *Bookbinding Magazine*, 23, 1936, May, pp. 28-32.

⁹ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 125-6.

¹⁰ *British and Colonial Printer and Stationer*, 119, 1936, p. 214.

¹¹ *London School of Printing Year Book*, 1935-36, pp. 107-20.

by the cloth drying out to a length shorter than when the glue was applied, thus resulting in a pull on the boards. Warping does not always arise during the binding process. Changes in atmospheric conditions may contribute to no small degree. Apart from the thoughtless borrower who reads before a hot fire, warping may follow as the result of using cloths and end-papers with different humidity-expansion properties.

Finishing. The development of "type-consciousness" has acted as a stimulus to designers of type, and a marked improvement is apparent in the production of professional journals, catalogues, bulletins, etc. This improvement is being reflected in the types used for lettering library books. There is a subtle difference between the types employed in letterpress work and those used for lettering books. In his Dent Memorial Lecture, Douglas Leighton¹² emphasised the fundamental difference between print and lettering. Type faces are designed to appear black on white; the general effect of gilt lettering is exactly the reverse and as a result many strong types are not so effective when used in this way. In the past, when the use of darker shades of leather and cloth was more common, the question of legibility did not arise with the force it does to-day. The demand by librarians for brighter bindings has brought in its train a problem which requires an adequate solution. That the designer of types for lettering has not kept pace with the advance made in the production of covering materials is a statement which must be accepted. But the type-designer cannot be blamed entirely for the state of affairs which exists to-day. The lettering of a book bound in one of the popular lighter shades may be perfectly legible at eye-level, but placed on a lower or a higher shelf the same lettering becomes almost invisible. Here is a problem which should appeal to the bookbinding section of the Printing and Allied Trades Research Association.

Gold and Gold Substitutes. In a lecture to the Grolier

¹² Leighton (Douglas): *Modern bookbinding: a survey and a prospect.* 63 pp., Dent, 1935.

Club¹³ A. H. Johnson traced very briefly the means of decoration from the Middle Ages to the present day. Considerable space was devoted to a discussion of the use of substitutes for gold. A note of warning is issued regarding the use of imitation gold. On application it shows a brilliance comparable with genuine gold, but in a very short time exposure will prove how fugitive that brilliance is. With leather the danger is even greater than with cloth. The natural fats and the tanning properties in the leather will tarnish the brilliance in a few hours.

The tarnishing of imitation gold is one of the problems into which the bookbinding section of the Printing and Allied Trades Research Association proposes to enquire in the future.

METHODS

Fuel was added to the much-debated subject of "reinforced" binding by L. White in a paper given at the Margate Conference¹⁴. Mr. White is endeavouring to arrive at a solution to the problem of ensuring that the wearing out of the external and the internal components shall coincide. He advocates that, before issue, all fiction should be "pulled," re-sewn and re-inserted in the original covers, which may be strengthened with a coat of lacquer. By adopting this procedure, the "institutional" appearance which is the hall-mark of many library books will be avoided. If, after use, the covers give out (which seems most likely) before the rest of the book is ready for discarding, it may be re-covered. Mr. White claims that the cost of the two processes is no more than a binding in which the covering and the sewing are done at the same time. During the subsequent discussion (p. 346), G. K. Wilkie voiced his disagreement with the practice of reinforcing fiction before issue. Given reasonable treatment, a publisher's case might serve for twenty or even thirty issues; if the book is then bound in facsimile, the result is virtually a new book.

¹³ *British and Colonial Printer and Stationer*, 119, 1936, pp. 442-5.

¹⁴ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 339-41.

In reply Mr. White said that a rebound novel became too dirty to circulate before the binder's covers were worn out.

GENERAL

As an indication of its extended field of enquiry, the Printing Industry Research Association has changed its official designation to the Printing and Allied Trades Research Association. The programme of the bookbinding section includes research into the questions of the curling of the corners of flush-bound books, the tarnishing of imitation gold blocking, the fading of coloured book-cloths and the protection of books against insect and rodent attack. In addition, standards of quality for bookbinding materials (boards, cloth, leather and adhesives) will be set up¹⁵.

Considerable progress towards the production of better library bindings has been made in America during the past year. The A.L.A. and the Library Binding Institute co-operated to form a joint committee which was empowered to invite applications for certification from library binders¹⁶. To obtain certification, binders had to prove their ability by submitting samples for examination. Applicants were required to be members of the L.B.I., to give adequate assurance against loss to libraries, and to show a sense of commercial responsibility¹⁷. The Board of Review reported¹⁸ that it had completed the examination of the work of the original applicants and that the standard of work submitted was gratifyingly high. The first provisional list of binders who had fulfilled the requirements of the Board was published in June¹⁹.

¹⁵ *British and Colonial Printer and Stationer*, 119, 1936, pp. 90-2.

¹⁶ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 38-9.

¹⁷ *Ibid.*, 61, 1936, pp. 124-5.

¹⁸ *Ibid.*, 61, 1936, pp. 422-3.

¹⁹ *Ibid.*, 61, 1936, pp. 510-11.

III. BOOKBINDING

(B) HISTORICAL

By H. M. NIXON, B.A., *Department of Printed Books,
British Museum*

THREE years have elapsed since the progress of research into the history of bookbinding was last reviewed in the "Year's Work" and an attempt will be made in this article to cover the more important publications of 1934 and 1935 as well as those of 1936. Comparatively little has been written on English binding during this period, but one number of the *Book-Collector's Quarterly* was devoted to this subject and contained an article on "Elkanah Settle: the Armorial Binding Expert"¹ by Col. W. E. Moss, based on his fine collection of "Settle" bindings, while the four following numbers included a very useful check list of "English Armorial Book Stamps of Private Owners"², compiled by H. J. B. Clements, and also based on the author's own extensive collection.

G. D. Hobson, however, has published two important studies, primarily on foreign bookbinding. The first of these, "Further Notes on Romanesque Bindings"³, is an amplification, and to some extent a revision, of the views he expressed in his "English Bookbinding before 1500." Since the appearance of that book in 1929, investigations abroad have almost doubled the number of known examples of 12th and 13th century work, and it is now clear that the great majority of these were produced, not in England, but in Paris by binders working for the School of Nôtre Dame, although the evidence still points to the existence

¹ *Book-Collector's Quarterly*, xiii, 1934, pp. 7-22.

² *Ib.*, xiv, pp. 64-72; xv, pp. 68-78; xvi, pp. 64-72; xvii, pp. 36-46.

³ *L. n.s.* xv, 1934, pp. 161-211.

of four separate and unrelated binderies in England. Hobson gives a full list of the ninety bindings of this type that are now known, the earliest of which date from before 1137, and also discusses the interesting question of the iconography of the tools used upon them. His scholarly and beautifully produced monograph on the "Fanfare" bindings⁴ gives a list of nearly three hundred specimens in accessible libraries, or of which reproductions are known. His conclusions, based on this list (which he admits to be by no means exhaustive) are not the less valuable because they agree with the generally accepted views; it may now be taken as certain that Paris was also the centre for the production of this freely imitated style, which remained in fashion from about 1570 until nearly 1700.

On another phase of French binding, Hobson's attribution of the great majority of the early sixteenth century panel stamps to Paris is questioned by L. M. Michon, who suggests in "*Reliures normandes du début du 16^e siècle*"⁵ that a considerable number are more probably provincial. He describes no fewer than 33 panels, which he divides into five groups, that he considers were engraved at either Rouen or Calais. Besides this article, "*Les Trésors des bibliothèques de France*" contains "*Notes sur quatre reliures du XVI^e siècle*"⁶ in which Jean Malo-Renault describes an unrecorded Grolier binding and Hobson writes on the Book of Hours of Catherine of Medici in the Bibliothèque Nationale and the problems raised by the use on it of the "S fermé," which are further discussed in an appendix to his "*Les Reliures à la fanfare*"⁴. In the *Bulletin du bibliophile et du bibliothécaire* R. Brun began, in December 1934, the publication of a "*Guide de l'amateur de reliures anciennes*," which although avowedly intended for the collector rather than the student, is an excellent summary from the French standpoint of the whole subject of the binding of printed books. Unfortunately it is not

⁴ Hobson. (Geoffrey Dudley): *Les Reliures à la Fanfare*, 151, pp. xxxvii. pl. Chiswick Press, 1935.

⁵ *Les Trésors des Bibliothèques de France*. Fasc. 19, 1935.

⁶ *Ib.*, Fasc. xx, 1935.

illustrated, and up to the end of 1936 only two chapters have been completed, dealing respectively with the bindings of the 15th century and the panel stamps of the early 16th century. Another general work is L. Morel-Payen's account of the finest bindings in the Bibliothèque de Troyes⁷ which include no fewer than eight Romanesque examples and the apparently unique French specimen of cuir-ciselé work. Over 50 bindings are illustrated with brief descriptions, but the small size of the reproductions deprives them of much of their value.

It is in Germany, perhaps, that research has been most active, fostered by the monthly appearance of the *A.f.Bb.* Max Husung, in "Neue romanische Bucheinbände"⁸ has reproduced and discussed in detail six Romanesque bindings from German libraries which have not previously been illustrated, while on another well-defined group, the cuir-ciselé bindings—to some the most interesting in that they are the most individual of all—valuable work has been done in the publication of further specimens now preserved in Germany and Austria⁹. In "Ein Ledereinband mit Flechtwerkstempeln in Blinddruck aus den 9 Jahrhundert"¹⁰ Heinrich Endres describes what is claimed to be the second oldest European binding decorated with blind stamps which has survived. It is now preserved in the University Library at Würzburg. Ilse Schunke has discussed "Die Einbände der Kirchenbibliothek in Emden"¹¹, in which she has shown that the well-known acorn panel, signed Jehan Norvis, was being used in Louvain between 1530 and 1540, and in her "Basler Einbände aus den letzten Jahrzehnten des 16 Jahrhunderts"¹² she has distinguished four different binders at Basle during this period who were influenced

⁷ Morel-Payen (Lucien): *Les plus beaux manuscrits et les plus belles reliures de la Bibliothèque de Troyes*, xiii, 194 pp., lii pl. Troyes, 1935.

⁸ *A.f.Bb.*, 1934, pp. 62-4; 1935, pp. 1-5, 89-92; 1936, pp. 41-3, 49-51, 89-92.

⁹ *Ib.* 1934, pp. 89-90; 1936, pp. 1-3.

¹⁰ *Ib.* 1936, pp. 65-7.

¹¹ *Ib.* 1936, pp. 57-9, 68-71.

¹² *Ib.* 1935, pp. 45-53.

more by German work of the Upper Rhine than by French or Swiss models. Of other valuable articles in the *Archiv* on individual craftsmen and on the historical development of technical details we have only space to mention "Die Buchschliesse. Ein technischer Beitrag"¹³ by Heinrich Lüers, which contains a classification of book-clasps and ties into six groups, with photographs of over twenty different types and will greatly facilitate the description of a feature of old bindings which too often goes unmentioned.

Heft 3 of the *Zeitschrift für Bücherfreunde* for 1935 contains several articles on bookbinding including one by Hermann Herbst on "Namenstempel und Namen von Buchbindern auf Einbänden des 15 Jahrhunderts aus sächsischen Bibliotheken"¹⁴ in which a new binding by Brother Moses of Heilsbronn is recorded, and much new light is thrown on the bindery of this monastery in E. Kyriss's excellent catalogue¹⁵ of the bindings in the University Library of Erlangen which possesses some four hundred books from the monastic library. Besides a monograph on these Heilsbronn books, the catalogue contains full descriptions of the bindings of over 200 manuscripts and also of some of the printed books which either come from a known bindery or are of special interest. One other German work which must be mentioned is W. G. Fischer's "Die Blütezeit der Einbandkunst"¹⁶, which deals with the development of the craft from the 15th to the 18th century, from an artistic rather than a purely historical angle.

Some very valuable work has been published on the early binders in the Netherlands by Prosper Verheyden. His "Boekbanden uit Maestricht"¹⁷ describes over 60 stamps found on blind-tooled bindings, the majority of which are

¹³ *Ib.* 1936, pp. 20-3.

¹⁴ *Zeitschr. für Bücherfreunde*, xxxix, pp. 49-55.

¹⁵ Katalog der Handschriften der Universitäts-Bibliothek Erlangen. Neubearbeitung. Bd. 6. . . Die Einbände, beschrieben von H. Kyriss. 76 pp., 41 pl. 1936.

¹⁶ Fischer (Wolfgang G.): *Die Blütezeit der Einbandkunst*. 73 pp. Leipzig, 1935.

¹⁷ *H.B.*, xxii, 1934, pp. 138-180.

of monastic origin, while in his essay on "La Reliure en Brabant"¹⁸ he has been able to demonstrate the use of panel stamps in the Netherlands as early as 1370. He has proved the accuracy of Weale's assumption of the identity of Godevaert de Bloc with the binder of a book in the Royal Library at Brussels having the inscription "Godefridus scriptor me fecit" impressed on the covers and discusses an inventory of Bloc's goods,¹⁹ made in 1383, which includes a "torcular impressarum vulgariter dictum printen" which can only refer to a press used for impressing panel stamps on the covers of books. He also suggests, in a discussion of the well-known 16th century Louvain panel stamps of Spes and Lucretia signed I.B. and I.P., that these initials are those of booksellers rather than of the actual craftsmen and may perhaps be those of Jacques Bathen and Jacques Pandelaert, both of whom were in business in Louvain between 1530 and 1550.

F. Hueso Rolland's catalogue²⁰ of the exhibition of bindings held in Madrid by the Sociedad Español de Amigos de Arte may fairly claim to be the most important work on the Spanish bookbinding which has yet appeared. It contains not only a description of the 500 books that were exhibited, but also a long historical introduction and an invaluable appendix of documents concerning the history of the art of Spain. A most interesting discovery is contained in Pedro Vindel's short monograph on Antonio de Sancha²¹, which gives a facsimile reproduction of a "sample book" of this 18th century binder made in order that his clients might have a choice in the design of their bindings and illustrating all the stamps and rolls he had in use. Mention should also be made of the Marqués de Saltillo's article on "Encuadernaciones Heráldicas Españolas"²²,

¹⁸ In.: *Le Livre, l'estampe, l'édition en Brabant du xve au xixe siècle*. Gembloux, 1935. pp. 142-188.

¹⁹ Printed in: *H.B.*, xxiv, 1936, pp. 129-45.

²⁰ Hueso Rolland (Francisco): *Exposición de Encuadernaciones Españolas siglos xii al xix*. Catalogo general ilustrado. 258 pp., 61 pl. 1934.

²¹ Vindel (Pedro): *D. Antonio de Sancha, encuadernador*, 20 pp., 28 pl. 1935.

²² *Revista Española de Arte*. 1934.

the first attempt to describe some of the more important heraldic stamps found on the covers of Spanish books.

Italy, on the other hand, does not seem to have been so well served, and apart from the short descriptions of the bindings exhibited in the Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale of Florence given by Domenico Fava²³, we have only noted Franz Schmidt's important discovery²⁴ in the Weimar Landesbibliothek of 13 new bindings made for Nikolaus von Ebeleben in Bologna between 1543 and 1548 all of which conform to his customary style.

In "Vom mittelalterlichen Bucheinband in Lübeck"²⁵ Max Husung stresses the importance of Lübeck as a binding centre whence books were distributed throughout Scandinavia, and also describes a new group of bindings decorated with stamps of St. Christopher and the Virgin and Child which he definitely ascribes to that town. Additions have also been made by Raynar Dahlberg and Collijn himself to the group of Swedish bookbindings decorated with panel stamps of Scandinavian saints described in 1933 by Isak Collijn in "En group svenska bokband med plattstämplat avbildande nordiska helgon"²⁶.

Finally we have two books to record from America. The first of these, Mehmet Aga-Oglu's "Persian Bookbindings of the Fifteenth Century"²⁷, contains an excellent short introduction showing how in this century the centre of production shifted from the west to Herat in the east and the great variety and beauty of the bindings produced there. The second work, Seymour de Ricci's catalogue of the Mortimer L. Schiff collection²⁸, is one of the most important contributions to the study of bookbinding made during our period. The collector's aim was to acquire signed specimens

²³ Fava (Domenico): *I Libri italiani a stampa del secolo xv con figure della Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Firenze*. Con un'appendice di legature, 1936. pp. 159-247.

²⁴ *A.f.Bb.*, 1934, pp. 17-19.

²⁵ *Nord. Tid.*, xxi, 1934, pp. 113-20.

²⁶ *Ib.*, xxi, pp. 19-21; xxiii, 1936, pp. 112-4.

²⁷ Aga-Oglu (Mehmet): *Persian Bookbindings of the Fifteenth Century*, ix, 23 pp., xxii pl. Ann Arbor, 1935.

²⁸ De Ricci (Seymour): *Signed Bindings in the Mortimer L. Schiff Collection*, 4 vol., 413 pl. New York, 1935.

of the work of the binders of the 18th and early 19th centuries in order to be able to supply authoritative data for the identification of unsigned specimens ; and, for a study of the later French binders in particular, this catalogue, thanks to the fulness of the descriptions and the excellence of the reproductions, will be of the greatest value.

CHAPTER XIV

HISTORICAL BIBLIOGRAPHY

By F. C. FRANCIS, M.A., *Assistant Keeper, Department
of Printed Books, British Museum*

A. GENERAL

PRIDE of place may well be given to the second volume of the "Lexikon des gesamten Buchwesens¹" by Karl Löffler, who died while this volume was in the press, and Joachim Kirchner. This work of which the first volume appeared in 1935 is to be completed by a third to be published in 1937. It is likely to be in constant demand by the bibliographer, for whom its easy references will be of the greatest utility. While it is, of course, not difficult to find omissions or unevenness of treatment to grumble at, the work will be found to answer most of the calls made upon it. It is refreshing, too, to find books and articles dated 1936 in the lists of references! The articles are brief and to the point and contain references to the main authorities. Another useful work for quick reference or for a general survey of any period of printing history is the "Chronology of Books and Printing" by H. Gentry and D. Greenwood, which has now appeared in a second edition². This now includes an abridgement, in advance of its publication in a complete form, of Professor Porter Garnett's descriptive *Conspectus of type-design*. R. Billoux's "Chronologie des arts graphiques"³ is a similar work.

With the completion of the general section and the index the admirable survey of the literature on fifteenth century printing published by the Wiegendruck Gesellschaft is

¹ Leipzig. Tl. 2. 640 pp.

² New York. viii, 186 pp.

³ Paris. pp. 60.

brought to a conclusion⁴. The scheme of the work has been to divide the subject into sections each dealing with one country or group of countries. The whole is an exemplary production. It is characteristic, however, of the vanity of human efforts towards completeness that the preface has already to note some remarkable additions to its material, such as the second supplement to the "Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke," published by Thomas Accurti⁵, who has continued to ransack the Italian libraries for incunabula not mentioned in that work. The first part of the second volume of the catalogue of the incunabula of the Royal Library at Copenhagen, by V. Madsen, has now made its appearance⁶; this covers the section Macer Floridus—Rolewinck (W.). The Public Library of Victoria possesses a working collection of incunabula and single leaves or sheets or other small portions of incunabula. The complete books are in a minority, comprising less than 100 out of 619 items; but the whole is quite enough to enable the student to study fifteenth-century printing in its main outlines. A check-list of this collection has been compiled by Albert Broadbent Foxcroft⁷, who includes also information on the provenance of the copies, binding and the like.

A short general study of the conditions of employment obtaining in the fifteenth century and other details concerning the employees in the early printing offices is contributed to the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* by Konrad Haebler⁸.

In recent years much labour has been spent on the reconstruction of the "libraries" of the past. Such records, apart from their intrinsic interest, are important as evidence of the literary resources of a period and as indexes of taste. A study of this kind has recently been applied to the library

⁴ Der Buchdruck des 15. Jahrhunderts. Eine bibliographische Übersicht. Berlin, 1929-36, xlv, 328 pp.

⁵ Accurti, T. Aliae editiones saec. xv. pleraeque nondum descriptae. Florentiae. 130 pp.

⁶ Katalog over det Kongelige Biblioteks Inkunabler. København. Bd. 2. pp. 1-160.

⁷ Catalogue of Fifteenth Century Books and Fragments in the Public Library of Victoria. Melbourne. pp. 163.

⁸ Haebler, K. Druckergesellen in der Frühdruckzeit. pp. 23-29.

of Giovanni Pico della Mirandola⁹, which was important not only for its size and variety but also for its owner's prominence in intellectual circles. The author of this work, Pearl Kibre, has reconstructed the library from records in inventories and catalogues and she gives a history and a detailed description of it. An appendix contains an unpublished inventory from the Vatican Library with short descriptive notes for purposes of identification. Fritz Husner contributes to the "Gedenkschrift zum 400. Todestage des Erasmus von Rotterdam" an account of Erasmus's library¹⁰. He describes the famous transaction whereby Erasmus sold his library to John Laski only reserving the right to keep and use it during his life-time, and traces the volumes still remaining—they number only 16—which can certainly be identified as having belonged to Erasmus. He prints the list of books made by Bonifacius Amerbach as an invoice of the books to be sent to Laski. D. J. H. ter Horst, in *Het Boek*,¹¹ identifies as having belonged to Erasmus an Aldine Plato (1513) which is now in the Koninklijke Bibliotheek at The Hague. This he supposes returned to Holland with the rest of Laski's books.

One of the "Kleine Drucke der Gutenberg Gesellschaft," by Armin Renker¹², traces briefly the origins of paper in the Far East and the beginnings of printing there. He describes the methods of paper-production and their gradual extension westwards. The work is illustrated with a number of illustrations from Chinese prints and from photographs taken from previous works on the subject.

B. SEPARATE COUNTRIES

ENGLAND

Since the publication in 1932 of "Title-page Borders used in England and Scotland 1485-1640," by R. B. McKerrow

⁹ Kibre, P. *The Library of Pico della Mirandola*. New York. xiv, 330 pp.

¹⁰ Husner, F. *Die Bibliothek des Erasmus*.

¹¹ Horst, D. J. H. ter. *Een boek uit de bibliotheek van Erasmus teruggevonden*. dl. 24. pp. 64-70.

¹² Renker, A. *Papier und Druck im Fernen Osten*. Mainz. 55 pp.

and F. S. Ferguson, a mass of new material has accumulated. Part of this has now been printed in *The Library* by F. S. Ferguson¹³. The material added includes thirty-two new compartments, one or two better examples and "earlier or later examples, different states, etc." of borders already produced in the main work. Notes of books not already listed in which the borders occur are withheld from publication, as these are frequently being added to. Dr. C. F. Bühler contributes two articles on Caxton to *The Library*¹⁴. In the first he enumerates a number of minor variants in Caxton's books, most of them corrections made while the books were going through the press. In the second he makes a fresh study of the batch of fragments of Caxton books used as printer's waste and discovered by Blades in a copy of the Boethius printed by Caxton. These were described by Blades in "The Life and Typography of William Caxton," and they were allotted to various dates on typographical grounds. In his article Mr. Bühler suggests that the groups of types 2 and 2* and 4 and 4* thought by Blades to have been used successively by Caxton were in fact in use at the same time. This would alter materially the suggested dates.

Colonel F. S. Isaac's "English Printers' Types of the Sixteenth Century"¹⁵ is a new presentation of his previous work on the subject published in the Bibliographical Society's quarto "Facsimiles and Illustrations" and *The Library*. The book is divided into three parts: "1501-58," in which the printers are set out chronologically and their types described; "Elizabethan," in which the classes of types are described; and "Secret Presses, Puritan, Catholic," containing a brief general description. The book is illustrated with 80 plates. Col. Isaac makes it clear that it is not his intention to include matter already dealt with elsewhere (as, for example, in Duff's *Century of the English Book-Trade*), but it must be

¹³ Ferguson, F. S. Additions to Title-page Borders, 1485-1640. Fourth Series, vol. 17, pp. 264-311.

¹⁴ Bühler, C. F. Caxton Variants. Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 62-69.

¹⁵ *id.* Three Notes on Caxton. Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 155-166.

¹⁵ Oxford University Press. xix, 60 pp. 80 pl.

confessed that for the twenty-five shillings which this book costs a more elaborate presentation might be expected. The works of Col. Isaac on English types from 1501-1558 are used as the basis of an article by A. F. Johnson, in which he lists earlier occurrences on the Continent of almost all the roman and italic founts in use in England before 1600¹⁶. Very often these English types do not agree in every particular, but for Mr. Johnson's purpose the identification is made when the types are derived from the same punches. The present writer describes in *The Library*¹⁷ a remarkable "tract volume" of four small pamphlets, three of which are unrecorded. Among the interesting typographical features in these pamphlets are a new title-page border (now included in the list mentioned above), several new woodcuts and a new address for the early sixteenth century printer, Richard Fakes. An account of certain Exchequer cases involving members of the book-trade in the middle of the sixteenth century, taken from the Exchequer Memoranda Rolls, Henry VIII, Edward VI and Philip and Mary, is contributed to *The Library* by H. J. Byrom¹⁸. These cases which concern (1) breaches of the statutes regulating trade and industry, (2) cases in which members of the book-trade acted as informers, (3) grants and reliefs and recognizances add new details to the scanty records of these early sixteenth century printers.

In "Contributions toward a Milton Bibliography,"¹⁹ W. R. Parker discusses first the printing of Milton's "Comus," the printer of which he identifies as probably Augustine Mathewes. He goes on to deal with three pamphlets, "Of Reformation," "Of Prelatical Episcopacy," and "Animadversions upon the Remonstrants Defence," and to show that they were the work of the same printers, Richard Oulton and

¹⁶ Johnson, A. F. Sources of Roman and Italic Types used by English Printers in the Sixteenth Century. In: *The Library*, Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 70-82.

¹⁷ Francis, F. C. Three Unrecorded English Books of the Sixteenth Century. Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 184-199.

¹⁸ Byrom, H. J. Some Exchequer Cases involving members of the Book Trade, 1534-1558. Fourth Series. Vol. 16. pp. 402-417.

¹⁹ In: *The Library*, Fourth Series. Vol. 16. pp. 425-438.

Gregory Dexter, whose initials appear on the second one. Two "personal" bibliographies of seventeenth century authors, both contributed to the *Proceedings and Papers of the Oxford Bibliographical Society*, may also be mentioned briefly here. They are the bibliography of Thomas Fuller, compiled by Strickland Gibson²⁰ with the assistance of some of his students in bibliography, and that of John Oldham, the Restoration satirist, by H. F. Brooks²¹. They are quite in accordance with the exacting standards of modern bibliographical work. Before leaving the sixteenth century mention must be made of a lengthy paper in *The Library* on the English song-books of the second half of the seventeenth century, by C. L. Day and E. B. Murrie²². The article is by way of being, as they themselves put it, an "interim report" on their work on this subject. The history of music publication at this time is largely that of John Playford and his son Henry, and the paper deals almost exclusively with them and their publications.

L. W. Hanson's "Government and the Press, 1695-1763"²³ aims at giving "an account of the relationship between government and the press from the expiration of the Licensing Act to the publication of No. 45 of the *North Briton*." This study is primarily political, but bibliographers will find in it useful information on the growth of the freedom of the newspaper press after the breakdown and abolition of the Licensing Act in 1695. This book like that of Col. Isaac mentioned above belongs to the series *Oxford Books on Bibliography*, but in each of them this information appears only on the jacket! I. A. Williams in a paper before the Bibliographical Society²⁴ deals with book-illustration in England during the first three-quarters of the eighteenth century. He considers 149 illustrated—not merely "decorated"—books of the period (which ends before the time of

²⁰ Gibson, S. A Bibliography of the Works of Thomas Fuller, D.D.

²¹ Brooks, H. F. A Bibliography of John Oldham.

²² Day, C. L., and Murrie, E. B. English Song-Books 1651-1702 and their publishers. Fourth Series. Vol. 16. pp. 355-401.

²³ Oxford University Press. ix, 149 pp.

²⁴ Williams, I. A. English Book Illustration, 1700-1775. In: *The Library*, Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 1-21.

Stothard, the Bewicks and their contemporaries) and demonstrates from them the growth of an English style in book-illustration and the gradual supplanting of foreign-born by English artists. It transpires that in the first quarter less than one-fourth and in the last nearly nine-tenths of the books were illustrated by English artists. Mr. Williams also gives an account of some of the artists working in England at the time, including Gravelot and Hogarth.

The bicentenary of the firm of Longmans was celebrated in 1924 by the publication of a volume by Mr. Harold Cox giving an account of the firm. There has now appeared a bibliography of all books handled by the firm during the eighteenth century, compiled by Charles James Longman²⁵, whose death unfortunately prevented him from seeing the result of his pious labours in print. The narrative in this volume is confined to an unfinished preface by the compiler and a forty-page appendix by the editor, J. E. Chandler, tracing the early history of the firm, supplementing on the bibliographical and genealogical side the volume by Mr. Cox mentioned above. The rest of the volume is taken up with the bibliography which is compiled from contemporary catalogues and periodicals and from the British Museum.

In his presidential address to the Bibliographical Society, Mr. R. A. Austen-Leigh²⁶ gave an interesting description of Joseph Pote of Eton, a small printer of the eighteenth century, who published not only numerous school-books and a local newspaper but also several more ambitious works including a new edition of William Cave's "*Scriptorum ecclesiasticorum historia literaria*," 1740, 43, Hearne's "*Itinerary*" of John Leyland, 1745, and Bartlet's "*Gentleman's Farriery*," 1753, and the same author's "*Pharmacopœia hippiatrica*," 1764. The publishing of the two last is described at some length.

Chap-books published by J. G. Rusher, printer and stationer at Banbury 1808-1877, are well known to collectors.

²⁵ Longman, C. J. *The House of Longman, 1724-1800*. Longmans.

²⁶ Austen-Leigh, R. A. *Joseph Pote of Eton and Bartlet's Farriery*. In: *The Library*, Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 131-154.

It appears that he had a predecessor in Banbury who produced the same kind of books, but whose works are not so well known. This was the business carried on successively by John Cheney and his son Thomas. An article in *The Library* by C. R. Cheney²⁷ puts together the known facts about these two printers and lists the works they are known to have published. An exhaustive search has revealed 40 items published between 1767 and 1822.

In "Keats's Publisher,"²⁸ Edmund Blunden gives a sympathetic account of John Taylor, one of the less known early nineteenth century publishers. Taylor, after serving for a time with two publishing firms, the first Lackington and Allen, set up in business in 1806 with James Augustus Hessey. The partnership lasted for twenty years, the first ten of which had no special distinction. From 1816 to 1825, however, they had a remarkable spell when they published *Endymion*, *Elia*, *The Opium Eater*, *Imaginary Conversations*, and discovered and launched John Clare. After this the partnership broke up and although Taylor continued to publish—he was publisher to the newly founded University College—he retired into comparative obscurity. Taylor appears to have been not only the publisher of Keats and Clare, he was also their friend and benefactor. He was also known for his quarrels with his authors. These Mr. Blunden puts down to two causes, his "editing" of their writings and his claim to copyrights. A descriptive bibliography of the extensive Wordsworth collection at Amherst College has been compiled by C. H. Patton²⁹. This is a bibliography on the grand scale. It contains a description of the scope and value of all the works described and these include not only works by or on Wordsworth himself, but such sections as books by or relating to S. T. Coleridge, biographies of Wordsworth's friends, the Romantic movement, the Lake district, and so on.

²⁷ Cheney, C. R. Early Banbury Chap-Books and Broad-sides. Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 98-108.

²⁸ *Cape*. 1936, 256 pp., 8s. 6d.

²⁹ Patton, C. H. The Amherst Wordsworth Collection. [Amherst.] xi, 304 pp.

The Henry E. Huntington Library possesses 54 out of the 55 items discussed in Carter and Pollard's "Enquiry into the Nature of Certain Nineteenth Century Pamphlets." From an additional investigation carried out in the library on the basis of that described by Carter and Pollard, it appears that certain modifications must be made in the conclusions arrived at by them, regarding the date at which Messrs. Clay's distinctive fount was used. This does not affect the main conclusions, but it does add other items to the list of suspects: Tennyson's "Becket," 1879, and Johannes Ewald's "The Death of Balder," translated by G. Borrow, 1889. The description of this investigation, by Roland Baughman³⁰, includes also a list of the Huntington copies of the forgeries.

* With a change in the constitution of the *Edinburgh Bibliographical Society* whereby it is no longer limited in its membership, a new series of the *Transactions* has been started. A general index to vol. 1-15 of the old series by Margaret Ross Dobie appeared separately during the year³¹, to take its place beside other similar indexes, such as that of the *Bibliographical Society* by Cole and of the *Zeitschrift für Bücherfreunde*. In vol. 1 of the new series appears a bibliography of Sir George Mackenzie, Lord Advocate, by F. S. Ferguson³². Mackenzie was not only the "bluidy advocate," he was also the assiduous cultivator of letters, so as to be called "the flower of the wits of Scotland." He was also the chief founder of the Advocates' Library, now the National Library of Scotland. This is an excellent bibliography with full collations and locations of copies, based on Mr. Ferguson's own collection. The volume also contains a revised edition, with additions, alterations and corrections, of C. J. Hindle's bibliography of Lady Eleanor Douglas, the seventeenth century prophetess³³.

³⁰ Baughman, R. Some Victorian Forged Rarities. In: *Huntington Library Bulletin*.

³¹ *Edinburgh Bibliographical Society*. General Index to Publications vol. 1-xv. Edinburgh. viii, 39, pp.

³² Ferguson, F. S. A Bibliography of the Works of Sir George Mackenzie. pp. 1-60.

³³ Hindle, C. J. A Bibliography of the Printed Pamphlets and Broad-sides of Lady Eleanor Douglas. pp. 65-98.

A volume issued by Alexander Thom and Co. entitled "Progress in Irish Printing"³⁴ has several interesting articles. These include "The Origins of Printing in Ireland," by Gerard Carr, "Paper Making in Ireland," by H. Ewen, "Gaelic Script and Modern Type," by Colin O. Lochlainn, the last containing an illustration of the new Colum Cille Monotype Gaelic, designed by the author, now being prepared by the Monotype Corporation.

Two more general studies can now be considered. F. M. Harrison, the authority on Bunyan's works, contributes an article to *The Library* on illustrators of "The Pilgrim's Progress"³⁵. The first two editions of "The Pilgrim's Progress" were without illustrations, Bunyan's style being probably thought sufficiently graphic, but with the third edition illustrations were introduced. Those who have illustrated "The Pilgrim's Progress" include Stothard, Flaxman, Blake, Cruikshank, the Dalziels and among the moderns, Blair Hughes Stanton, and Gertrude Hermes. Dr. John Johnson, also in *The Library*³⁶, gives a summary of a paper on the development of job-printing. He briefly sketches the reasons for the failure of the letterpress-printer as a jobbing-printer in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries and the rapid development of the pure jobbing-printer in the nineteenth.

AMERICA

The future historian of printing in America should have no cause to complain of the present generation of typographical and bibliographical students. A large number of excellent works on the origins of American printing appear year after year, the most prolific contributor to this number being D. C. McMurtrie. This year, in addition to some more monographs on separate towns, he has published the first of four volumes of a history of printing in the United States.³⁷

³⁴ Dublin.

³⁵ Harrison, F. M. Some Illustrators of Bunyan. Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 241-263.

³⁶ Johnson, J. The Development of Printing other than Book Printing. Fourth Series. Vol. 17. pp. 22-35.

³⁷ McMurtrie, D. C. History of Printing in the United States. Vol. 2. Bowker, New York. xxvi, 462 pp.

This is the first attempt at such a history since Isaiah Thomas's book appeared in 1810 (the later edition of that work, 1874, did not carry the story beyond 1810). The present volume is actually the second of the whole work, the first, containing a general survey, will be published with volume 4. It deals with the Middle and Southern Atlantic States, treating each separately in considerable detail and with many illustrations. Each chapter has a useful bibliography and notes. McMurtrie's other contributions during the year deal with Morristown imprints, 1798-1820³⁸, books printed in Brooklyn, N.Y. 1799-1820 (supplementing Wegelin's bibliography)³⁹; he has also issued three of his preliminary, mimeographed, lists of books, published in this form to allow additions and corrections to be incorporated when the series is finally published; these contain lists of books, pamphlets and broadsides published at Auburn, N.Y., 1810 to 1850⁴⁰, at Ithaca, N.Y., 1811 to 1850⁴¹ and in Mississippi, 1811 to 1830.⁴²

The first of a series of "Huntington Library Lists" is a "Checklist of American Laws, Charters, and Constitutions of the 17th and 18th Centuries," compiled by W. O. Waters.⁴³ The Library of Congress has issued during the year a revised edition of J. van Ness Ingram's catalogue of the American eighteenth century newspapers in the Library of Congress⁴⁴, which appeared originally in 1912. The editor of the revised edition is H. S. Parsons.

In the preface to "Country Printer, New York State, 1785-1830"⁴⁵ the author, M. W. Hamilton, complains that in the

³⁸ *id.* Bibliography of Morristown Imprints, 1789-1820. Chicago. 31 pp.

³⁹ *id.* Issues of the Brooklyn Press. Brooklyn.

⁴⁰ *id.* A Short-Title List of Books, Pamphlets and Broadsides printed in Auburn, N.Y., 1810 to 1850. Chicago. 79 pp.

⁴¹ *id.* A Short-Title List of Books printed in Ithaca, N.Y., 1811 to 1850. Buffalo. 55 pp.

⁴² *id.* A Short-Title List of Books printed in Mississippi, 1811 to 1830. Chicago. 47 pp.

⁴³ San Marino. vii, 140 pp.

⁴⁴ Van Ness Ingram, J. A Check List of American 18th Century Newspapers in the Library of Congress. Washington. vi, 401 pp.

⁴⁵ [New York: State Historical Association Series. no. 4. New York. xiii, 360 pp.]

numerous histories of journalism and excellent accounts of important newspapers, little attention is given to the beginnings of the country press in America. The local newspapers often played an important rôle in politics and community life, the editor-printer-publisher being an important local figure. This book sets out to remedy this omission and to describe the position held by the local press in New York State before 1830. The appendices include a list of printers, editors and publishers of country newspapers in New York during the period.

After the short-lived attempts of Abel Buell (1769) and Fox or Bey (1775), and others, the first type-foundry to achieve permanency in the United States was that set up in Philadelphia in 1796 by Archibald Binny and James Ronaldson. They issued the first American specimen book in 1809, "A Specimen of Metal Ornaments cast at the Letter Foundry of Binny & Ronaldson," and the first type-specimen book, "Specimens of Printing Types, from the Foundry of Binny & Ronaldson," in 1812. These two books have been reproduced in facsimile and published with an introduction and illustrations of other early type-foundries by the Columbiad Club of Connecticut⁴⁶.

In the *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of America*, G. J. Miller describes the career of the Princeton printer, David A. Borrenstein⁴⁷. It appears that Borrenstein came from London where he learnt his trade in the printing office set up by the London Society for promoting Christianity among the Jews about 1810. He emigrated to Princeton (his activities there are described in V. L. Collins's "Early Princeton Printing," 1911), but owing to financial difficulties returned to London, where he printed a Bible in 1837, and finally settled in Glasgow, where he published several works. The article concludes with a bibliography of Borrenstein's imprints.

⁴⁶ The Specimen Books of Binny and Ronaldson, 1809-1912 in facsimile. With an introduction by Carl Purington Rollins. Connecticut.

⁴⁷ Miller, G. J. David A. Borrenstein. A printer and publisher at Princeton, N.J., 1824-28. Vol. 30. pt. 1. pp. 1-56.

remarkable as it has apparently been in the possession of its present owners for nearly 300 years. The excellent facsimile by Messrs. Emery Walker has a short bibliographical note by way of introduction by V. Scholderer, who deals briefly with Toulouze's work and with the special problems raised by the book itself.

A study of the woodcuts of Jakob Cammerlander's press in Strasburg is contributed to the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* by Heinrich Röttinger⁵³. The author draws attention to the artistic worth of much of Cammerlander's book decoration and studies the work for this press of Hans Weiditz and the anonymous artist who followed him. The article includes a list of books from Cammerlander's press, and many illustrations.

Claude Dalbanne contributes an article, also to the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch*, on early editions of the Dance of Death⁵⁴. He briefly describes the editions printed by Guyot Marchant of the "Danse Macabre des hommes" and the "Danse Macabre des femmes," and goes on to consider in greater detail editions of each of these printed in Paris by the widow of Jehan Trepperel and Jehan Jehannot, c. 1511-1520, and Jehan II Trepperel, c. 1527-1532 respectively. He lists the woodcuts in these editions, tracing them to the source from which they were derived.

What is likely to remain the standard work on pre-1800 French type-specimen books has been compiled by Marius Audin and printed at the Cambridge University Press⁵⁵. Audin gives an historical and bibliographical account with many facsimiles of these works and also includes biographical sketches of the owners of the various type-founding firms.

Georges Degaast has a brief article in the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* in which he traces the history of paper-making in Auvergne⁵⁶ and gives a résumé of the ancient processes as

⁵³ Röttinger, H. Die Holzschnitte der Druckerei des Jakob Cammerlander in Strassburg. pp. 125-140.

⁵⁴ Dalbanne, C. Deux éditions de la danse macabre imprimées à Paris au xvi^e siècle. pp. 98-118.

⁵⁵ Audin, M. Les livrets typographiques des fonderies françaises créées avant 1800. Paris. 199 pp. 64 pl.

⁵⁶ Degaast, G. Les vieux moulins à papier d'Auvergne. pp. 9-13.

still preserved in the few remaining paper-mills. A short essay on the same subject by H. Pourrat appears as a supplement to *Philobiblon*⁵⁷. This, however, is not a new contribution but a translation, by Armin Renker, of an article published in *L'Illustration* in 1933.

GERMANY

Dr. C. F. Bühler contributes to the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* the results of a recent examination of books printed by Conrad Fyner in Urach, preserved in the Pierpont Morgan Library⁵⁸. He brings out several points which have not been previously noted. The first makes clear a method, previously misunderstood, employed by Fyner in numbering the columns of an edition of William of Ockham's Commentary on the Sentences of Peter Lombard; another describes the second edition of Fyner's "Buch der Weisheit" which has not, as he says, been fully described elsewhere. These points are brought out by several illustrations.

As a result of recent research Oppenheim's earliest printer, Jakob Köbel, has been shown to be an "incunable-printer." Other details too have been added to our knowledge of his life and activities. These have been opportunely gathered together by V. von Klemperer in an article in *Philobiblon*⁵⁹. Klemperer's small study confines itself to giving those particulars which are not contained in the several essays on him by F. W. E. Roth.

An exceedingly useful survey of the literature of printing in German-speaking countries in the sixteenth century has been prepared by J. Benzing⁶⁰. It supplements the information given in the invaluable general work of J. B. Childs on books on sixteenth-century printing. The main part of Benzing's book is occupied with the "local" bibliographies

⁵⁷ Pourrat, H. Die alten Papiermühlen in der Auvergne. Wien. 9 pp.

⁵⁸ Bühler, C. F. Notes on Conrad Fyner's Press in Urach. In: *G. J.*, pp. 63-72.

⁵⁹ Klemperer, V. von. Der Frühdrucker Jakobus Kobel. Jahrg. 9. pp. 23-29.

⁶⁰ Benzing, J. Der Buchdruck des 16. Jahrhunderts im deutschen Sprachgebiet. Leipzig. 136 pp.

giving books on the printing in individual places, but he also includes a general section dealing with books on printing in Germany generally, on the book-trade, book-illustration and music printing. The list is selective, no attempt being made to include all the relevant material, but the area included is a wide one and comprehends places outside the present German-speaking area, where printing was almost wholly carried on by Germans at this time.

An interesting discussion on the invention of *fraktur*, by K. F. Bauer, is published as a supplement to the *Zeitschrift für Bücherfreunde*⁶¹. The author discusses the various claimants to the title of inventor of the letter which was first used in print in the famous "Gebetbuch" of Maximilian I and claims to have found the real author from an examination of a writing-book of Leonhard Wagner, a Benedictine of the monastery of St. Ulrich and Afra in Augsburg. He describes this book which was thought to have been lost, but which is still preserved in the episcopal library at Augsburg. The essay has many facsimiles and the portrait of Wagner after the drawing by Hans Holbein the elder.

Among the many useful contributions to the history of printing in Germany contained in the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* are two on the sixteenth century which are worthy of mention here. The first concerns Sebalduß Striblita of Erfurt⁶². Nothing is known about this printer save what he himself tells us in the colophons of his books, but he is interesting because he was printing in Germany in 1510 with an Italian cursive. This the writer, M. von Hase, supposes was brought from Italy. The article includes a list of the seven works ascribed to this press. The press of Arnd von Aich and his successors is the subject of the second of the two articles⁶³. Except that he came presumably from Aix-la-Chapelle very little is known of this printer at Cologne.

⁶¹ Bauer, K. F. Leonhard Wagner, der Schöpfer der Fraktur. Frankfurt. 20 pp. Abb. 7.

⁶² Hase, M. von. Sebalduß Striblita in Erfurt der erste deutsche Kursivdrucker, 1510. In: *G.J.*, pp. 94-97.

⁶³ Köntzner, G. Arnd von Aich und Nachkommen, Kölner Buchdrucker zur Reformationszeit. *ib.* pp. 119-124.

What is known is here set down by Gustav Könitzer on the basis of the notes of the late Georg Domel, and the nine existing works from this press are described.

A Munich dissertation by Marianne Schuster is devoted to the life and works of Johann Esaias Nilson, the miniaturist and engraver of Augsburg in the rococo period.⁶⁴ As a book-illustrator he is noteworthy for his decorations; these have recently been dealt with by A. Rümman, "Das deutsche illustrierte Buch des xviii. Jahrhunderts" (1931) and M. Lanckorońska and R. Oehler, "Buchillustration des xviii. Jahrhunderts in Deutschland, Österreich," etc. (1932-34).

K. Wüefrath contributes a bibliography of the literature of the Westphalian Mark to the *Veröffentlichungen der Historischen Kommission des Provinzialen Instituts für Westfälische Lands- und Volkskunde*.⁶⁵ Part 1 of this work which appeared during this year deals with books before 1666. It is divided into three periods, A, before 1543; B, 1543-1609; C, 1609-1666; within these main divisions the books are divided into books written in Westphalia and books written by Westphalians elsewhere. The entries contain references to authorities and locations of copies. It includes also a dictionary of authors, a list of presses in Westphalia and a list of Westphalians who printed elsewhere, etc. W. Maushake's "Frankfurt an der Oder als Druckerstadt"⁶⁶ is another work on local bibliography. Printing was first practised in Frankfort by Martin Tretter in 1502, and its history is here traced step by step, with numerous illustrations from that time up to the present day. The work aims at completeness within its own prescribed limits up to the nineteenth century. It does not, however, attempt to give a list of books printed in Frankfort. This has already been done for the first twenty years by Gustav Bauch in the *Zentralblatt für Buch- und Bibliothekswesen*, Bd. 14, 1898.

The German political publishing and printing offices in

⁶⁴ Schuster, M. Johann Esaias Nilson, ein Kupferstecher der süd-deutschen Rokoko. München. vii, 285 pp.

⁶⁵ Wüefrath, K. Bibliotheca Marchica. Die Literatur des Westfälischen Mark. Münster. Tl. 1. 425 pp.

⁶⁶ Frankfurt a/O und Berlin. 135 pp.

Switzerland in 1840-1848 have been described by Hans Gustav Keller from the point of view of their importance for the prehistory of the German revolution of 1848⁶⁷. The author gives a detailed picture of the varying fortunes of these presses, much of whose work was done in secret. His catalogues of the productions of the five most important, carried out in an accurate and scholarly manner, reveal the authors of many anonyma and pseudonyma, and bring to light many false imprints. A Heidelberg dissertation by W. H. Ganser, subsequently published in Ebering's "Historische Studien"⁶⁸, deals from a similar point of view with the *Süddeutsche Zeitung für Kirche und Staat*, the central organ of the Catholics in Baden. This study is, however, almost entirely political.

By way of conclusion the following may be briefly mentioned: G. Buchmann's history of the paper-makers in Oberweimar, contributed to the *Neue Beiträge zur Geschichte der Stadt Weimar*⁶⁹; a list, compiled from the *Berliner Titeldrucke* and published as a supplement to it, of German pseudonyms, changes of name, etc., for the period 1892-1935⁷⁰; and the histories of two old-established printing and publishing firms, the Wittichsche Hofbuchdruckerei in Darmstadt and Friedrich Vieweg & Sohn in Brunswick, the former by H. Bräuning⁷¹, in his *Der Buchdruck in Darmstadt*, the latter by E. A. Dreyer⁷².

ITALY

The Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale in Florence has one of

⁶⁷ Keller, H. G. *Die politischen Verlagsanstalten und Druckereien in der Schweiz, 1840-1848*. Berlin und Leipzig. [Berner Untersuchungen zur allgemeinen Geschichte. 8.]

⁶⁸ Ganser, W. H. *Die Süddeutsche Zeitung für Kirche und Staat, Freiburg, 1845-48*. Berlin. 119 pp.

⁶⁹ Buchmann, G. *Geschichte der Papiermacher zu Oberweimar*. Weimar. ix, 151 pp.

⁷⁰ Namenschlüssel. *Die Verweisungen der Berliner Titeldrucke zu Pseudonymen Doppelnamen und Namensveränderungen, 1892-1935*. Berlin. 799 pp.

⁷¹ Bräuning, H. *Die L. C. Wittichsche Hofbuchdruckerei, 1764-1934*. Darmstadt. viii, 272 pp. 60 pl.

⁷² Dreyer, E. A. *Friedrich Vieweg & Sohn in 150 Jahren deutscher Geistesgeschichte, 1786-1936*. Braunschweig. ix, 260 pp.

the best collections of incunabula in Italy, but it is specially rich in illustrated incunabula of which it possesses some 325, not counting duplicates. Advantage has been taken therefore of facilities offered by a new building to exhibit these Italian fifteenth century books, the authorities hoping thereby to break new ground. The elaborate catalogue, by D. Fava, will form a most useful work of reference on this subject⁷³. The catalogue is divided into two main divisions, one containing woodcuts, the other six copperplates. The first division is divided into three groups: (1) Florentine, of which there are 145 different examples; (2) other Italian towns, excluding Venice, which forms the third group. The books are arranged alphabetically under each town. There are many plates, and an appendix of bindings.

In *The Library* Irvine Masson gives an entertaining description of a single incunabulum⁷⁴, a version by Andreas Brentius of Cæsar's address to his men at Besançon: "C. Iul. Cæsaris oratio Vescontione belgice ad milites habita," [Bartholomaus Guldinbeck, Rome, c. 1481]. The author's detailed study of the printer's technique as shown in this book forms a most instructive essay.

The earliest Italian engraved title-page is contained in a work entitled "Purifica della conscientia," a translation of a supposititious work of St. Thomas Aquinas printed at Florence in 1512. This, however, is an isolated example and the real history of Italian engraved title-pages begins with the work of Enea Vico of Parma, whose books were printed at Venice from 1548 onwards. From this time engraved title-pages appeared in a continuous sequence, and at least 130 had appeared by 1600. A catalogue of these prepared by A. F. Johnson has been published as a supplement to the Bibliographical Society's Transactions⁷⁵. Mr. Johnson's book contains a brief historical introduction and a list of

⁷³ Fava, D. *I libri italiani a stampe del secolo 15 con figure della Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Firenze*. Milano. xxiv, 278 pp.

⁷⁴ Masson, I. *The Bibliography of a small Incunable*. Fourth Series, vol. 17. pp. 36-61.

⁷⁵ Johnson, A. F. *A Catalogue of Italian Engraved Title-pages in the Sixteenth Century*. London. xi, 27 pp. 8 pl.

the books under the engravers' names, with descriptions of the engraved title-pages. No fewer than two-thirds of the examples are signed or can be confidently attributed to individual artists. The book is illustrated with eight excellent collotypes.

G. Bresciano has made what was fated to be his last contribution of learned "Neapolitana" to *Bibliofilia*, for his death was announced in this periodical a number or two after that which contained his last contribution.

Publishers and printers in Ravenna in the sixteenth century are dealt with in a small monograph by S. Bernicoli⁷⁶.

NETHERLANDS

In an article in the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch*, Auguste Vincent describes the history of the printed book in Brabant from the fifteenth century to 1800⁷⁷. The author mentions briefly the MS. books, block books and the like which were in existence before the invention of printing with movable types; he also quotes the case of the famous Doctrinal, "*jeté en moule*," which was bought in 1445 at Bruges by the Abbé de Saint-Aubert of Cambrai. Printing was established almost at the same date at Louvain and Brussels. The author describes the press of Jean Veldener, established at Louvain in 1474, and that of his successor John of Westphalia and the solitary fifteenth century press at Brussels, that of the Frères de la Vie commune, 1475. The article is well illustrated.

Het Boek contains, as usual, many entertaining and useful articles on the history of printing in the Netherlands. Among them is one by M. E. Kronenberg containing additional information to her former articles in this journal on Robert de Keysere⁷⁸. She deals with a Paris edition (not apparently printed by him) of the *Asinus Aureus* which

⁷⁶ Bernicoli, S. *Librai e tipografi in Ravenna tutto il secolo 16*. Bologna. 24 pp.

⁷⁷ Vincent, A. *Le Livre imprimé en Brabant du xv^e siècle à 1800*. pp. 48-56.

⁷⁸ Kronenberg, M. E. *Nog iets over Robert de Keysere, drukker in Gent en in Parijs*. dl. 24. pp. 41-55.

contains a letter of de Keyser dated from Paris, November, 1510. This conflicts with her previous opinion that a book printed by him at Ghent and dated 1st September, should be assigned to the year 1511. This date must now be amended to 1510 and the date of his removal to Paris put earlier. The letter of de Keyser is printed in full in the original Latin and in translation.

A supplement to *Philobiblon*, translated from the Czech of Rudolf Hála, sketches the life and work of Christoph Plantin against the general background of the period⁷⁹.

Among the contributions to *Het Boek* dealing with later periods of Dutch printing is one which describes the work of Peter Warnersen⁸⁰, the most successful printer at Kampen in the sixteenth century. It includes a list of his productions. Another article by W. Gs. Hellinga gives a descriptive account, with a list, of Frisian printed works of the seventeenth century⁸¹, discussing the cultural influence of Frisian literature.

A collection of unpublished documents bearing on the printers of Antwerp is being contributed to *Gulden Passer*, by L. Le Clerq; part I appeared during the year.⁸²

SCANDINAVIA

A facsimile of the oldest Icelandic book printed in Iceland is the latest addition to the series *Monumenta typographica Islandica*⁸³. This book, an Icelandic translation by Oddr Gottskalksson of Corvinus's six sermons on Christ's passion first published in German in 1537, is known only from one imperfect copy in the library of Copenhagen University.

The influence of the French style of book-decoration in the eighteenth century was not so striking in Denmark as elsewhere. But that its effects on the degenerate book-

⁷⁹ Hála, R. Christoph Plantin. Aus der Blütezeit des Buchdruckes in Antwerpen. Wien. 37 pp.

⁸⁰ Kraus, G. H. A. Peter Warnersen drukker en uitgever te Kampen. dl. 24. pp. 147-186.

⁸¹ Hellinga, W. Gs. Friesche drukken in de zeventiende eeuw. dl. 24. pp. 109-117.

⁸² Le Clerq, L. Antverpia typographica.

⁸³ Passio 1559. Facsimile edition with an introduction by Jón Helgason. Copenhagen.

production of the time are readily discernible is well shown in Lauritz Nielsen's "Rokokoen i dansk Bogkunst"⁸⁴. This essay is based on a lecture delivered before the Forening for Boghaandværk some time ago; it has many excellently produced illustrations. The centenary of A. F. Høst and Sons is celebrated by a volume entitled 100 *Aar mellem Bøger*, by P. Christiansen.⁸⁵

The *Nordisk tidskrift för bok- och biblioteksväsen* contains an account by Solveig Tunold of a recent acquisition of the Oslo University Library⁸⁶. This is a collection of 104 printed poems, till recently lying neglected in a country cottage. It bears a written dedication to Peder Rafn, the man who brought it to Norway nearly three hundred years ago. As has been mentioned the volume contains 104 separate items, all but five of them unknown; 23 of them are in German and 81 in Dano-Norwegian. They are nearly all dated, the dates ranging from 1617 to 1634, except one item from 1583. This remarkable discovery opens up a rich mine of new information and gives really valuable additions to our knowledge of early seventeenth century literature and printing. The article is devoted to a description of the Scandinavian items.

The catalogue of an exhibition of printing in Sweden from 1483 to 1850, held in the Royal Library at Stockholm in 1933-34 to celebrate the four hundred and fiftieth anniversary of the introduction of printing into Sweden, has this year made its rather belated appearance⁸⁷. It is published by the various institutions participating in the exhibition and has an introduction by Isak Collijn, who with C. Björkbom was responsible for the Exhibition and the catalogue. The items are arranged chronologically by places and printers; a short biographical notice based on the latest research is prefixed to the entry for each printer. The catalogue has sixty-two facsimiles.

⁸⁴ København.

⁸⁵ København. 108 pp.

⁸⁶ Tunold, S. Peder Rafns visebok. årg. 23. pp. 135-165.

⁸⁷ Det svenska boktryckets utveckling, 1483-1850. Stockholm. xvi, 48. pp, 62 pl.

An interesting study of the press and the literature of the 1790's is contained in J. V. Johansson's account of the newspaper *Extra Posten*, 1792-95⁸⁸. His work contains an account of the political and literary contents, and a bibliography and index of persons. A contribution to the history of Swedish American newspapers, supplementing Lundstedt's *Svensk tidningsbibliografi*, 1886, is made by Prof. O. F. Anders's guide to the collections of such newspapers in the Royal Library, Stockholm, and in the Augustana College Library, Rock Island⁸⁹.

SPAIN

A work which should have been mentioned here last year is Francisco Vindel's "Escudos y Marcas tipográficas de los Impresores en España durante el siglo XV."⁹⁰ This is made up entirely of reproductions of the various marks, arranged by places.

Facsimiles of two unique Spanish incunabula in the British Museum have been published during the year by the Trustees of the British Museum under the editorship of Dr. Henry Thomas. They are: "Fray Ambrosio Montesino: Coplas sobre diversas devociones," c. 1485⁹¹ and "El Comendador Roman: Coplas de la Pasión con la Resurrección," c. 1490⁹². Both are to be ascribed with some degree of probability to the press of Juan Vázquez in Toledo. Early Spanish printed books are so rare that these facsimiles are welcome from a typographical point of view as well as from the wider literary point of view.

An account containing a number of new facts and documents concerning the ancient family of Guasp, printers in Mallorca for very many years, is contributed to the *Gutenberg-jahrbuch* by S. Dueñas Blasco⁹³. The article

⁸⁸ Johansson, J. V. *Extra Posten*, 1792-95. Göteborg.

⁸⁹ Anders, O. F. *Swedish American Political Newspapers*. Stockholm. 28 pp.

⁹⁰ Madrid, 1935. 39 pp.

⁹¹ London.

⁹² London.

⁹³ Dueñas Blasco, S. *Los Guasp, patriarcas mallorquines de las Artes de Gutenberg en España*. pp. 150-160.

also deals briefly with the work of the predecessors of this family in Mallorca, Nicolás Calafat and Fernando Cansoles.

A collection of prolegomena to a quater-centenary edition of Xerez : " Verdadera Relacion de la Conquista del Peru " is published in the *Papers of the American Bibliographical Society* by Alexander Pogo⁹⁴. This contains the results of typographical investigations into the various editions and translations. As the author says, this material is more interesting to the bibliographer of 16th century Spanish and Italian books than to the student of Peruvian history.

SWITZERLAND

The fourteenth International Congress on the History of Art was made the occasion of an exhibition in the Basle University Library designed to illustrate the importance of Basle in book art. The early importance of Basle book illustration was due to the fact that Basle printers were able to draw on the services of such artists as the Master of the Bergmann Press, Urs Graf and the Holbeins. The development of book illustration in Basle from these noble beginnings is well illustrated in the historical arrangement of the catalogue of this exhibition⁹⁵, the unity of the subject making it possible to produce a really valuable monograph. The success of the exhibition and of the catalogue is largely due to the expert assistance of Arnold Pfister, the editor of the Swiss incunabula catalogue. An account of the relations of Paris and Basle book decoration in the first part of the sixteenth century is contributed by Hans Koepler to a volume commemorating the opening of the Basle Kunstmuseum⁹⁶.

In the *Schweizer Sammler*, which has been the vehicle of much valuable information on early Swiss printing,

⁹⁴ Pogo, A. Early Editions and Translations of Xerez : Verdadera Relacion de la Conquista del Peru. Vol. 30. pp. 57-84.

⁹⁵ XIV. Internationaler kunstgeschichtlicher Kongress, 1936. Universitäts- Bibliothek Basel. Ausstellung: Die Bedeutung Basels für die Buchkunst. Basel.

⁹⁶ Koepler, H. Wechselbeziehungen zwischen dem Basler und Pariser Buchschmuck in der ersten Hälfte des xvi. Jahrhunderts. In : *Festschrift zur Eröffnung des Kunstmuseums*.

F. Blaser contributes a further article on printing in Lucerne⁹⁷ and P. Leeman van Elck an account of the Zurich printer of the sixteenth century, Augustin Mellis or Fries⁹⁸, the printer, among other works of Johann Kleiner's "Kanzleisch Fundamentbüchlein von mancherlei Schriften."

OTHER COUNTRIES

A book devoted to the Howes, Australia's first printers—if we except sporadic "official" printing in the convict days—contains an interesting survey of their press and their newspaper *The Sydney Gazette and New South Wales Advertiser*⁹⁹. The contributors are J. A. Ferguson, "The Howes and their press"; Mrs. A. G. Foster, "The Howes and the Gazette Office"; and H. M. Green, "Australia's first newspaper and its founder." A useful list of New Zealand authors and their works has been published during the year.¹⁰⁰ It contains a surprising number of names and many which one had never before connected with New Zealand! Besides this list it has a number of essays on such subjects as "The New Zealand Novel," "New Zealand Book-Illustration," and so on.

A discussion of the artistic influences at work in Southern Germany and Austria, and in particular of the work of the artist A.N. and the Winterburger Press for whom he worked, much of whose decorative material is derived from Italian sources, is contributed to the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* by Hedwig Gollob¹⁰¹.

R. Antik has published a short sketch of the development of the art of the book in Esthonia from 1535 to 1935¹⁰². His work contains a large amount of information and is generously illustrated.

⁹⁷ Blaser, F. Aus Luzerns Buchdruckergeschichte. In: *Schweizer Sammler*.

⁹⁸ Leeman van Elck, P. Der Zürcher Drucker Augustin Mellis, gen. Fries. *ib.*

⁹⁹ Ferguson, J. A. and others. The Howes and their Press. Sydney.

¹⁰⁰ *Annals of New Zealand Literature*.

¹⁰¹ Gollob, H. Winterburgers buch künstlerische Beziehungen zu Oberitalien. pp. 82-87.

¹⁰² Antik, R. Eesti raamat 1535-1935. Tartu. 129 pp.

An article in the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch* by Albert Gárdonyi is devoted to the well-known family of printers in Hungary, the Landerers¹⁰³. The founder of the business was Johann Sebastian Landerer, who came to Buda probably from Vienna in 1686. The business was expanded after his death in 1727 by his wife's second husband, J. G. Nottenstein. On the latter's death the business reverted to Landerer's sons in whose hands the business prospered and gradually spread.

A Munich dissertation by V. Kaupas deals with the press of Lithuania¹⁰⁴. Part I only has been published so far: this deals with the period up to 1904.

Mirko Breyer contributes to *Philobiblon* an account of southern Slavonic rarities consisting of such items as Glagolitic incunabula from Venice, Croatian incunabula in Gothic letter, early Glagolitic books from Venice, Fiume, etc¹⁰⁵.

Polish works include the catalogue of an exhibition of fifteenth and sixteenth century Cracow printed books held in the Biblioteka Jagiellońska, the library of the University of Cracow¹⁰⁶, and a dictionary of Polish pseudonyms and cryptonyms¹⁰⁷.

Zeno Kuziela, in the *Gutenberg-Jahrbuch*, puts forward reasons for ante-dating Ukrainian printing by nearly one hundred years¹⁰⁸. The first printer of Ukrainian appears to have been the German Schweitpold Fiol at Cracow, where after a lengthy period of preparation he published several Ukrainian books in the Cyrillic church-character. He is therefore the founder of Ukrainian printing and the first printer of Slavonic works in the Cyrillic character.

¹⁰³ Gárdonyi, A. Die Niederlassung der Buchdruckerfamilie Landerer in Ungarn. pp. 171-176.

¹⁰⁴ Kaupas, V. Die Presse Litauens. München. Tl. 1. 221 pp.

¹⁰⁵ Breyer, M. Südslavische Rara und Rarissima. Jahrg. 9. pp. 247-283.

¹⁰⁶ Biblioteka Jagiellońska. Katalog wystawy druków krakowskich 15-go i 16-go wieku. Kraków. 58 pp. 10 pl.

¹⁰⁷ Bar, A. Słownik pseudonimów i kryptonimów pisarzy polskich oraz Polski dotyczących. Kraków. 2 pt. xxxviii, 230 + 240 pp.

¹⁰⁸ Kuziela, Z. Der Deutsche Schweitpold Fiol als Begründer der ukrainischen Buchdruckerkunst. pp. 73-81.

CHAPTER XV

BIBLIOGRAPHY: GENERAL AND NATIONAL

By DR. JORIS VORSTIUS, *Bibliotheksrat, Prussian State Library, Berlin*

Translated by A. C. TOWNSEND, M.A., *Assistant Keeper (The Library), British Museum (Natural History), S.W.7*

GENERAL AND INTERNATIONAL

General

SIDE by side with the complete German edition of the Decimal Classification upon which work was begun in 1934, and of which in the meantime the second *Lieferung* has been published¹, has appeared in 1936 the English version². This styles itself the fourth international edition, and at the moment two fascicules and the general introduction are available.

The most important contribution to theoretical bibliography which has appeared in the year under review is a work by G. Schneider³, taking the form of a complete revision of the theoretical part of his "Handbuch der Bibliographie," which part was omitted in the fourth edition of the "Handbuch." This new contribution, in addition to an exposition of bibliography in general and of general bibliographical technique, including the collection, the setting out and order of titles, contains also a completely new section on the different kinds of

¹ Dezimalklassifikation. Deutsche Gesamtausgabe. Bearbeitet vom Deutschen Normenausschuss. Lief. 2: Abt. 3. Sozialwissenschaften, Recht, Verwaltung. Abt. 4. Philologie, Sprachwissenschaften. Berlin, 1935. pp. 149-308. 4°.

² Universal Decimal Classification. Complete English edition. Fourth international edition. General introduction.—Vol. 1, Fasc. 1: Auxiliary tables.—Fasc. 2: 0, Generalities. London, 1936. pp. xiv; 40; 26. 4°.

³ Schneider, G. Einführung in die Bibliographie. Leipzig, 1936. 203 pp.

bibliography, especially on special bibliographies of subjects.

Bibliographical Aids

Among general bibliographical textbooks, a second, carefully revised and somewhat enlarged edition of Krabbe's "Manual" has appeared⁴, which was first issued in 1930, and specially intended for the instruction of librarians. A work of unusually large bulk by the Paris librarians Calot and Thomas lists not only bibliographies but also works of other character⁵; for in addition to the bibliographies of all special fields (with the exception of Technical Science and Agriculture) and the general national and international bibliographies, it includes biographies and encyclopaedias. Furthermore, for each science the most important comprehensive collections are set out. All this is given in a very concise form and therefore is not always satisfactory, especially as concerns the non-French works. A very good textbook, on the lines of Krabbe's "Manual" but rather more ambitious, has been written by L. R. and E. R. McColvin^{5a}.

Reference Works

The literature of general bibliographical reference works has received a noteworthy addition in the shape of the new and enlarged edition of the standard bibliography of reference works by I. G. Mudge⁶.

General Book Lists and Book Catalogues

The fourth edition of B. Graham's "Guide to Literature"

⁴ Krabbe, W. *Bibliographie*. Ein Hilfsbuch für Bibliothekspraktikanten. 2., durchgesehene und ergänzte Auflage. Leipzig, 1936. pp. 66. (Veröffentlichungen der Berliner Bibliotheksschule. Abteilung für den mittleren Dienst an wissenschaftlichen Bibliotheken. H. 1.)

⁵ Calot, F. et Thomas, G. *Guide pratique de bibliographie suivi d'un memento analytique des principales bibliothèques publiques de Paris*. Paris, 1936. 320 pp.

^{5a} McColvin, L. R. and E. R. *Library stock and assistance to readers*. A text-book. viii, 229 pp. Grafton & Co., 1936.

⁶ Mudge, I. G. *Guide to reference books*. 6. ed. Chicago, 1936. x, 504 pp.

for booksellers, secondhand book-dealers, librarians and bibliophiles remains unchanged as regards its arrangement⁷. It contains, however, a strictly popular—for only books in the English language are mentioned—introduction to general reference works and the literature of philosophy, poetry, history and art, intended for the general public and excluding all academic material. This new edition is considerably enlarged when one compares it with the third edition of seven years ago.

Of the two great international catalogues the printing of which has been going on since 1931, the catalogue of the Prussian State Libraries and that of the British Museum, the German catalogue has undergone an important transformation. With the beginning of the letter "B" the number of institutions contributing to the catalogue has been increased to over 100, and thus all the important German libraries now send their contributions to this truly national undertaking. The first volume of the catalogue, thus enlarged, appeared after an astonishingly short space of time in the autumn of 1936⁸.

Personal Bibliography

In the wide field of Bio-bibliography, the work by Arnim, compiled in the Prussian State Library, takes a special place⁹. Intended first of all, by the provision of lists of works of modern national and foreign authors available in literature, as an aid to the rectification of inexact orders at the issue desks of the greatest German library, it goes further and supplies in general terms an answer to questions on the literary work of the most important writers, both academic and otherwise, and of all countries, from the middle of the 19th century. With the name of each

⁷ Graham, B. *The bookman's manual. A guide to literature.* 4. ed., revised and enlarged. New York, 1935. xi, 715 pp.

⁸ *Deutscher Gesamtkatalog.* Herausgegeben von der Preussischen Staatsbibliothek. 9: B-Bailey. Berlin, 1936. col. 880, 4 leaves. 2°.

⁹ Arnim, M. *Internationale Personalbibliographie 1850-1935.* In der Preussischen Staatsbibliothek bearbeitet. Leipzig, 1936. xii, 572 pp. 4°.

author appears in a concise form an indication as to where the best list of his works (books and articles) can be found. The work contains over 25,000 names and is up to now the most important contribution to the so-called "subjective" personal bibliography.

Lists of Incunabula

During the last year the 6th and the beginning of the 7th volume of the "Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke" appeared¹⁰. Furthermore, the Incunabula catalogues of London and Copenhagen respectively were continued. With regard to the great catalogue of Incunabula of the British Museum, the description of the Italian Incunabula which was begun in the fourth volume has now been finished. The present 7th volume which has followed the 6th after an interval of 5 years, contains at the end an alphabetical list of authors and a register of printers¹¹. The number of early Italian works catalogued in this volume is 4,180, the products of the printing presses of 58 towns.

In the meanwhile Madsen has so far proceeded with the catalogue of Incunabula in the Royal Library at Copenhagen, begun in 1931, that not only the first volume issued in three parts and listing 2,560 Incunabula, with a historical introduction and containing authors "A-L" has appeared¹², but the first part of the second volume as well¹³.

NATIONAL

Austria

An inconvenient gap in the series of bibliographical tools for work on dissertations has been filled by the three-volume

¹⁰ Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke. Herausgegeben von der Kommission für den Gesamtkatalog der Wiegendrucke. Bd. 6: Caballus—Confessione. Bd. 7, lief. 1: Coniuratio—Dati. Leipzig, 1934-35. pp. viii + 5 + col. 4 + 852; col. 1-288. 4°. (Nos. 5832-8031.)

¹¹ Catalogue of books printed in the 15th century now in the British Museum. P. 7: Italy: Genoa—unassigned. Addenda. London, 1935. pp. lxxxviii, 901-1213, 37-50, pl. 73-109. 2°.

¹² Madsen, V. Katalog over det Kongelige Biblioteks Inkunabler. Bd. 1 (=H. 1-3). København, 1935. xxx, 459 pp. 4°.

¹³ Madsen, V. Katalog over det Kongelige Biblioteks Inkunabler. H. 4. København, 1936. pp. 1-160. 4°.

reference work on Vienna Philosophical Dissertations from 1872¹⁴. This has been arranged by subjects, and each division has a catchword index, and each volume an author index.

Czechoslovakia

Nosovský's Czech bibliography of the 20th century in which he collaborates with Pražák has had its alphabetical section continued by the systematic part¹⁵. The work, so far as can be judged at present, is nearing completion.

Denmark

Among current bibliographies is to be noted a new volume of the Danish five-yearly catalogue¹⁶. This has been compiled on the same principles as its predecessors, under the skilled editorship of H. Ehrencron-Müller.

Finland

Routavaara's list of newspapers is of importance on account of its comprehensiveness¹⁷. Here are arranged in alphabetical order all newspapers which have appeared in Finland from 1771-1932, together with the names of the editor and the mode of publication. There are 797 entries, and, in addition, a chronological index, an index of localities and an index of editors.

France

What impetus has been given in France since the Great War to that typical modern variety of bibliography, known

¹⁴ Verzeichnis über die seit dem Jahre 1872 an der Philosophischen Fakultät der Universität in Wien eingereichten und approbierten Dissertationen. Bd. 1-3. Wein, (1935-36). pp. 283; 298; 434.

¹⁵ Nosovský, K. and Pražák, V. Soupis československé literatury za léta 1901-1925. P. 18-27. V Praze, 1934-35. pp. 1-788. 4°.

¹⁶ Dansk Bogfortegnelse for Aarene 1930-34. Udarbejdet af H. Ehrencron-Müller. (In 23 parts.) København, 1935-36. 724 pp. 4°.

¹⁷ Routavaara, A. Suomen sanomalehdistö 1771-1932. Bibliografinen esitys. La presse finlandaise 1771-1932. Exposé bibliographique. Helsinki, 1935. pp. 145. Offprinted from *Suomi*, 5, 18.

as documentation, can be well seen from a glance at the very complete list of all the French centres of documentation published by the *Union Française des Organismes de Documentation (U.F.O.D.)*¹⁸. This list includes not only the information departments of technical, economic and industrial organisations, but also those information bureaux attached to libraries ; and it gives most exact details of the aims and scope of action of each institution. A subject index at the end of the work answers questions as to which fields of activity in France to-day possess centres of documentation.

Ritter's catalogue of books printed in Alsace in the 16th century has been continued in two parts up to the heading "Bebelius"¹⁹.

Germany

The bibliographical section of the *Börsenverein der Deutschen Buchhändler* has prepared the first volume of the period 1931-35—authors from A-K—of the German cumulative bibliography²⁰. Four more parts of Mundt's list of German academic dissertations from the beginning of the 16th to the end of the 19th centuries have been issued, bringing the work down to the word "Kühn"²¹.

Wehrmann's bibliography of Pomeranian newspapers and periodicals is intended as material for the study of the history of newspapers²².

¹⁸ La Documentation en France. Répertoire des centres de documentation existant en France, publié par l'Union française des organismes de documentation. Paris, 1935. 146 pp. 4°.

¹⁹ Ritter, Fr. Répertoire bibliographique des livres imprimés en Alsace au 16^{me} siècle de la Bibliothèque nationale et universitaire de Strasbourg. Livr. 2.3. Strasbourg, (1935-56). pp. 33-96.

²⁰ Deutsches Bücherverzeichnis. Eine Zusammenstellung der im deutschen Buchhandel erschienenen Bücher, Zeitschriften und Landkarten. Bd. 17 : 1931-1935, A-K. Leipzig, 1936. pp. 1670. 4°.

²¹ Mundt, H. Bio-bibliographisches Verzeichnis von Universitäts- und Hochschuldrucken (Dissertationen) vom Ausgang des 16. bis Ende des 19. Jahrhunderts. Lief. 5-9 : Folten-Kühn. Leipzig, 1935-36. pp. 321-720. 4°. (End of the volume.)

²² Wehrmann, M. Die pommerschen Zeitungen und Zeitschriften in alter und neuer Zeit. Herausgegeben von der Gesellschaft für Zeitungskunde und Buchdruck in Pommern. Pyritz, 1936. vii, 111 pp.

Great Britain

The collective list of English publications during the last 5 years, namely for 1931-35, has been produced with a rapidity much to be appreciated²³, for although the present volume is much larger than that for the period 1926-30, it was, none the less, available in June 1936.

Greece

The National Library of Greece has redoubled its efforts to quicken up the production of its yearly list of Greek publications. Thus, in 1936 the Library has succeeded in producing the list for 1935 as well as that for 1934²⁴. In addition work has been carried out retrospectively for the year 1930, and thereby has put back by one year the material for the work which originally began with the year 1931²⁵.

Hungary

Réz has produced a complete list of the German newspapers and periodicals which have appeared in Hungary up to the year 1918, giving 1,819 entries²⁶. The evaluation of this material is assisted through statistical summaries and a historical introduction.

Latvia

The older series of the Latvian National Bibliography has been further continued by a volume which lists articles in periodicals for the period from 1896-1900²⁷. The current

²³ *The English Catalogue of books*. Vol. 13 : January 1931 to December 1935. Edited by J. D. Stewart. London, 1936. 1982 pp. 4°.

²⁴ *Ελληνική βιβλιογραφία*. Τεύχος 4: 1934. Τεύχος 5: 1935. 'Επιμελεία Ν.Α. Βέρτη. 1936. pp. 151; 110 (*Γενικὸν Συμβούλιον βιβλιοθηκῶν τῆς 8. 11.*)

²⁵ *Ελληνική βιβλιογραφία*. 1930. 'Επιμελεία Ν.Α. Βέρτη. 'Εν Ἀθήναις, 1936. pp. 162. (*Γενικὸν Συμβούλιον βιβλιοθηκῶν τῆς Ἑλλάδος*. 9.)

²⁶ Réz, H. *Deutsche Zeitungen und Zeitschriften in Ungarn von Beginn bis 1918*. München, 1935. pp. 150. (Veröffentlichungen des Instituts zur Erforschung des deutschen Volkstums im Süden und Südosten in München und des Instituts für ostbairische Heimatforschung in Passau. No. 8.)

²⁷ Ginters, A. *Latviešu zinātne un literatūra. 1896-1900. gadi. Periodikā iespēstotakstu rādītājs*. (Science et littérature des lettons.) Rīgā 1936. pp. 532. (Latvijas Valsts Bibliotēka. Bibliografija. E.)

yearly series of this bibliography, which was for many years compiled by V. Caune, has found a new editor in the person of A. Augstkalns. The last published volume is that for 1931²⁸. The Latvian Stationery Office has published for the first time an official list of national periodical publications giving details of price, period of publication, and sources from which they are obtainable²⁹.

Lithuania

I. Kisinas has made a list of the Lithuanian periodicals of the year 1935, including those in the Lithuanian language which have appeared outside the country³⁰.

Netherlands

There has begun to appear a supplementary series to the bibliography of Netherlands "post-*Incunabula*," that is, printed works from 1500-1540, which was the work of W. Nijhoff and M. E. Kronenberg and appeared in 1919-1923 with over 1,000 titles. The supplement also gives the titles in alphabetical order³¹.

Norway

A newly founded quarterly list issued by the Norwegian Booksellers Union marks an improvement in the current bibliography of recent books³². This new list collects together quarterly the new books which are announced in the *Norsk Bokhandlertidende*, and, in view of the fact that it is divided into 14 subject headings, provides for the

²⁸ Augstkalns, A. Latvijas zinātne un literatūra. (Science et littérature de la Lettonie.) 1931. Red. M. Stumbers. Rīgā. pp. 513. (Latvijas Valsts Bibliotēka. Bibliografija. Ser. 1, sējums 13.)

²⁹ Laikrakstu saraksts ar uzrādītām cenām un pasūtīšanas noteikumiem pasta iestādēs. Liste des journaux avec indications des prix et conditions de livraison. (Year 1.) Rīgā 1936. pp. 23.

³⁰ Kisinas, I. Lietuvos ir užsienio lietuvių kolonijų 1935 m. periodika. Kaunas, 1936. pp. 22. (From: Bibliografijos Žinios 9, 1936. pp. 99-111, 147-154.)

³¹ Nijhoff-Kronenberg. Nederlandsche bibliographie van 1500 tot 1540. 2. deel door M. E. Kronenberg. Aflevering 1-3. 's-Gravenhage, 1936. pp. 1-192.

³² Kvartalsfortegnelse over norsk litteratur. 1936, No. 1-3. Oslo, 1936. pp. 16 each.

first time a rapid survey of the recently published books in the different subjects.

Poland

The earlier series of Estreicher's general Polish bibliography of the 15th-18th centuries has advanced as far as the letter "T"³³. With regard to the elucidation of pseudonyms, a subject to which care has long been given in Poland since the middle of the 19th century, we note the appearance of a new summary of the available knowledge in two volumes, the work of A. Bar³⁴. This is intended to supplement the former work of L. Czarkowskis from the year 1922 onwards. Zielinski has given an account of Polish periodicals printed abroad in the last hundred years with a most instructive introduction and a chronological index of places and names³⁵.

Rumania

After an interval of several years the bibliography of old Rumanian literature which was begun in 1903, and which aims at a complete description of Rumanian literature from 1508-1830, has been completed by the publication of the fascicules dealing with the years 1817-1830³⁶.

Russia

The Russian Academy of Sciences has made a meritorious contribution to the bibliography of the earlier Russian literature with its list of Russian works of the years 1741-1761³⁷. This list is now in process of publication in the

³³ Estreicher, K. *Bibliografia polska*. T. 31=Cz. 3, T. 20: *Litera*. T. Wydał S. Estreicher. Kraków, 1936. pp. vi + 508 + iv. 4°.

³⁴ Bar, A. *Słownik pseudonimów i kryptonimów pisarzy polskich oraz Polski dotyczących*. Przy współudziale W. T. Wiśtockiego i T. Godłowskiego. T. 1: A-K. T. 2: L-Ż. Kraków, 1936. pp. xxxviii + 230; pp. 240. (*Prace biblioteczne Krakowskiego Koła Związku bibliotekarzy polskich*. 7.8.)

³⁵ Zielinski, S. *Bibliografia czasopism polskich zagranicą, 1830-1934*. Warszawa, 1935. pp. 308.

³⁶ Bianu, I. și Simonescu, D. *Bibliografia românească veche, 1508-1830*. T. 3, fasc. 3-8. București, 1936. pp. viii + 193-777. 4°.

³⁷ *Izdaniya graždanskoj pečati vremeni imperatricy Elisavety Petrovny, 1741-1761*. Č. 1: 1741-1755. Moskva, Leningrad, 1935. pp. vi + 303. 4°.

form of annals. The same Academy has issued a list of all its own publications in the Russian language from the time of the foundation of the Academy, in so far as these appeared in book form, and are still available upon application³⁸. The current yearly bibliography of scientific literature, which began with the year 1928 and of which part appeared out of its proper order, has been augmented by one volume, which concerns itself with the social and technical sciences³⁹. Recently in Russia, as in certain other countries, a move has been made to summarise bibliographically book-reviews in which much scientific and critical work is often stored up⁴⁰.

Sweden

Collijn has continued his bibliography of early Swedish literature⁴¹.

Switzerland

The Swiss National Library's catalogue of the literature for the ten years 1921-30 has progressed slowly. The name and place catalogues which appeared in 1931-33 have been followed in the meantime by two parts of the systematic catalogue arranged according to the Decimal Classification⁴². These are the main divisions 0-3.

³⁸ Pljuskin, L. N. i Gejdrich, E. K. Katalog imejuščichsja v prodaže izdanij Akademii nauk. 1769-1935. Knigi na russkom jazyke. Moskva, Leningrad, 1936. pp. viii + 240.

³⁹ *Naučnaja literatura SSSR*. Sistematičeskij ukazatel' knig i žurnal'nych statej. God izdanija 4: 1931. (Section:) *Technika*.—God izdanija 6: 1933. (Section:) *Obščestvennye nauki*. Polutom 1 (and) *Technika*. Moskva, 1935-36. pp. xxiv, col. 535; pp. xvi, col. 318; pp. xxxiv, col. 941. 4°.

⁴⁰ Letopis' recenzij za 1935 god. 2. god izdanija. Pod redakcij Ja. N. Eleckogo, V. I. Soloveva, E. I. Šamurina. Moskva, 1936. pp. xiv + 163. 4°.

⁴¹ Collijn, I. *Sveriges bibliografi intill år 1600*. Bd. 1, H. 3: 1498-1514. Uppsala, 1936. pp. 161-240. 4°. (Skrifter utgivna av Svenska Litteratursällskapet. 10, 16.)

⁴² Systematisches Verzeichnis der schweizerischen oder die Schweiz betreffenden Veröffentlichungen 1921-1930. (Part 1:) 0. Allgemeine Literatur. 1. Philosophie; 2. Religion, Theologie. (Part 2:) 3. Sozialwissenschaften, Recht, Militär, Erziehung, Volkskunde. (Part 3:) 4. Sprachwissenschaft. Bern, 1934-1936. pp. 1-361. (Katalog der Schweizerischen Landesbibliothek Bern.)

Turkey

Following upon the suspension of the earlier Turkish bibliographical publication *Bibliyografya* which dealt with the period 1928-1933⁴³, we have to note the compensatory periodical *Türkiye bibliyografyası* which will also give an account of all books and periodicals appearing in Turkey, and which has already dealt with the period 1928-1935⁴⁴.

Ukraine

In view of the centrally important position held by the Slavonic academies in the publication of scientific works, the new list of publications of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences has thus a bibliographical significance⁴⁵. This is increased by the fact that there was a deficiency of recent useful general lists of books produced in the Ukraine.

United States and Canada

The Library of Congress has issued a new edition of the catalogue of American newspapers of the 18th century in its possession⁴⁶. The first edition appeared in 1912, and the new work gives a list of the accessions which have been added to a section of the library which has grown in the meantime half as large again. The bibliographical value of the catalogue consists in the precise details as to the full title, the printer, publisher, editor and manner of appearance, and these especially when a newspaper has undergone many changes during its lifetime.

The A.L.A. has issued an index designed to help the searcher in the sadly overlooked field of the bibliography of dissertations in the United States and Canada. This list of bibliographies contains not only general bibliographical

⁴³ *Bibliyografya*. Cilt 1-3 = No. 1-16. 1928-1933. Istanbul, 1931-1935.

⁴⁴ *Türkiye bibliyografyası*. 1928-33. 1934, 1. 2. 1935, 1. 2. Istanbul, 1933-36. pp. vii + 259; 208; 140.

⁴⁵ Katalog vidan Akademii nauk USSR. No. 1. Kiiiv, 1936. pp. 162.

⁴⁶ Ingram, J. van Ness. A check list of American eighteenth century newspapers in the Library of Congress. New edition, revised and enlarged. Washington, 1936. pp. vi + 401. 4°.

references to dissertations, but also material arranged by subject matter⁴⁷. The fact that theses often appear in specialist periodicals, and the existence of innumerable lists of theses from different institutions in the country have also been taken into account.

Haas has made a list of the latest products of American private presses, and has thus provided a continuation of the well-known work by W. Ransom : "Private Presses and their books," 1929⁴⁸. Forty-five presses and their products are described.

Cappon's list of newspapers of the State of Virginia, giving 1,763 items, must be placed among the most important bibliographies of local areas. The newspapers of this State are arranged under towns since 1821, and the work is especially important on account of the location indications of newspapers and the abundant bibliographical references⁴⁹.

White Russia

A survey of the newspapers and periodicals at present appearing in White Russia in different languages from the year 1934 has been compiled by the White Russian Central Book-Council in Minsk. This list, arranged according to language, gives exact descriptions and also a subject index⁵⁰.

Yugoslavia

Z. Pirnat has compiled a bibliography with 387 items, of the periodicals, books, translations and music produced by the women of Slovenia⁵¹.

⁴⁷ Palfrey, Th. R. and Coleman, H. E. Guide to bibliographies of theses, United States and Canada. Chicago, 1936. 48 pp.

⁴⁸ Haas, I. Bibliography of modern American presses. Chicago, Illinois, 1935. 95 pp.

⁴⁹ Cappon, L. J. Virginia newspapers 1821-1935. A bibliography. New York, 1936. pp. xiii + 299. (Guide to Virginia historical materials. 1.) (University of Virginia. Institute for research in the social sciences. Institute monograph No. 22.)

⁵⁰ Peryjadyčny druk BSSR u 1934-35 gg. Mensk, 1935. pp. 71.

⁵¹ Pirnat, Z. Bibliografija del slovenskih pisateljic do konca 1935. Bibliographie des œuvres des écrivains féminins slovènes jusqu'à la fin de 1935. Ljubljana, 1936. 64 pp.

CHAPTER XVI

PALÆOGRAPHY AND MANUSCRIPTS

By C. E. WRIGHT, M.A., Ph.D., *Assistant Keeper, Department of MSS., British Museum, London, W.C.1*

IT may not have been customary in the past to devote attention in these chapters to works upon Oriental MSS., perhaps wisely, the field being a highly specialized one, for which the knowledge of Oriental languages is a first essential: the publication of the catalogue of Indian miniatures in Mr. Chester Beatty's collection however makes it necessary, I think, to break with tradition on this occasion (and without creating a precedent)¹. The disposal of a portion of his Western MSS. by Mr. Beatty in 1932-3 brought, most unfortunately, to an abrupt stop the publication of Dr. Millar's catalogue of that part of his library. The Indian MSS. were however left untouched and the task of cataloguing them was entrusted to Sir Thomas Arnold; his sudden death in June 1930 held up the project for a time but the completion of the catalogue and the delicate task of revising what Arnold had written was undertaken and most successfully carried out by Mr. J. V. S. Wilkinson of the Oriental Department at the British Museum. The work of the publishers, Messrs. Emery Walker, is beyond praise, and surely never have they achieved anything more perfect in colour and technical finish than the reproduction of Bichtir's portrait of Saint Shah Dawlat in Jahangir's Album which forms the frontispiece to Vol. i.

It is impossible for me to say anything about the school of Mughal painting that is so fully illustrated by the Beatty miniatures, in which the student of Western illumination is

¹ Arnold, Sir T. W., and Wilkinson, J. V. S. *The Library of A. Chester Beatty: a Catalogue of the Indian Miniatures. Oriental MSS. 1-18. 19 pl. in colour+84 in monochrome. Vol. i. Text; Vols. ii, iii. Plates. Emery Walker Ltd. London, 1936.*

conscious of a two-fold interest: the excellence of the miniatures before him and their parallels in the illumination with which he is most familiar. For instance, in the frontispiece of Vol. ii he notes the contrast between the details of the busy scene in the background and the repose of the central figures, his mind inevitably comparing with it the Calendar scenes in Flemish MSS. of the late XV and early XVI centuries. To the masterly treatment of the portraits in the Album of Jahangir I know of no parallel in Western MSS. The handling of European motifs and scenes, with which Indian painters became familiar through the gifts of travellers and the religious pictures of Jesuit missionaries, is very interesting, and good examples are the Nativity (pl. 82) and the angels hovering over the head of the Emperor Shāh Jahan (pl. 86), while the crowded pages of bird and animal life in the exquisite little 'Iyar-i-Danish (pll. 42-47) send one's mind immediately to that enigma of Western illumination, the work of Cybo, the 'Monk of Hyères'—note especially Egerton MS. 3127, f.1^b.

Mr. Chester Beatty's interests as a collector have been many-sided and his library contains also a small but famous collection of Greek Biblical papyri, whose provenance was possibly some church or monastery in the neighbourhood of the Fayûm. Most of these were purchased 1930-1 and are in course of publication under the editorship of Sir Frederic Kenyon. 1936 has now witnessed the completion of fasc. iv by the publication of the second Genesis papyrus (C.B. Pap. V) and the production of the plates of Revelation (C.B. Pap. III; also fasc. iii) and of a supplementary fasc. iii, which contains the whole text of the Pauline Epistles and includes a reprinting of the 1934 fasc. The ten-leaved MS. of fasc. iii has now grown to a MS. of 86 leaves, by the inclusion of the Michigan portion of the MS. (30 leaves), acquired 1930-3, and by the purchase of 46 more leaves by Mr. Beatty in 1935. Scholars have in this volume the whole MS. as now known, containing an almost complete copy of St. Paul's Epistles and being in date at least a century older than the hitherto known authorities for the

text. The arrangement of the leaves and all the problems associated with the text are discussed by the editor in his introduction. It is a remarkable testimony to Sir Frederic Kenyon's scholarship that so many of the tentative suggestions made by him in fasc. iii have been borne out by the newly discovered leaves².

In my 1934-5 chapter I overlooked Professor Kirsopp Lake and Silva Lake's facsimiles of dated Greek minuscule MSS. which began to appear in 1934 and have now reached part VI³. The material of the first four parts was drawn from MSS. at Jerusalem, Patmos, Athens (1934; I), Venice, Oxford, London (1934; II), the monasteries of Mt. Athos, Milan (1935; III), and Paris, pt. i (1935; IV). In 1936 two more parts have been added, viz., part V which completes the Paris MSS. and deals with those from Berlin and Vienna, and further specimens from Oxford and Jerusalem, and part VI which is devoted entirely to examples from Moscow and Leningrad. The collection is thus well advanced and the serious study of Greek minuscule MSS. during the centuries preceding 1200 has at last become possible⁴.

A Greek illuminated MS. at Leningrad (Gr. 105), probably from the latter half of the XIII century, is the subject of a two-volume monograph by two American scholars⁵. In Vol. ii, after a full description of the MS. in which the text, palæography, date and history are discussed by Professor Colwell, the miniatures are the subject of a three-hundred page account by Professor Willoughby, in

² A comprehensive account of the Beatty Papyri and the importance of them and other papyrological studies of 1936 in recent Biblical research will be found in Dr. H. I. Bell's *Recent Discoveries of Biblical Papyri*, an inaugural lecture delivered at Oxford in November 1936 and published early in 1937 by the Clarendon Press. See also Sir Frederic Kenyon's *The Story of the Bible*, London, 1936.

³ Lake, Kirsopp, and Silva, Lake. *Dated Greek Minuscule MSS. to the year 1200. Part VI.* American Academy of Arts and Sciences, Boston, Mass., 1936.

⁴ A most useful List of Printed Catalogues of Greek MSS. in Italy, by Mr. J. Enoch Powell, is printed in *The Library*, 4th Ser., vol. xvii (1936), pp. 200-213.

⁵ Colwell, E. C. *The Four Gospels of Karahissar. Vol. i. History and Text; and Willoughby, H. R. Vol. ii. The Cycle of Text Illustrations.* Univ. of Chicago Press and Cambridge Univ. Press. (I regret to say that I have been able to see only Vol. ii).

which their place in the history of Byzantine iconography and their relationship to other Byzantine illuminated MSS. is treated ; some 137 plates, containing reproductions of the Leningrad miniatures and of other examples of Byzantine art (MS. and otherwise), illustrate the book. While the illuminations have some departures from normal Byzantine iconography the MS. is not unrelated, being closely allied to the Rockefeller McCormick N.T.MS.2400, Laura B.26 at Athos, at least one MS. at B.M. (Add. 11836), and a number of MSS. elsewhere, all of which are listed on p. 4 (Footnote 2). The Karahissar MS. has been known to Western scholars since the 1864 inventory of Greek MSS. in the old Imperial Library at St. Petersburg. Its illuminations, like those of most Byzantine MSS., have suffered from the faulty technical knowledge of the original artists.

Of strictly palæographical interest is a thin volume of 72 pages supplementing the late Professor W. M. Lindsay's "*Notæ Latinæ*" (1915), which has become an indispensable reference book in every palæographer's library and which many must have hoped would be continued to include the *notæ* employed after 850. Miss Bains in this "*Supplement*"⁶ has incorporated and completed the material which Professor Lindsay had begun to collect but which, for reasons given in his Foreword, he was forced to abandon ; in his Foreword will also be found some general remarks on the symbols of the period covered and a list of corrigenda to "*Notæ Latinæ*." Miss Bains' book is most useful, but there are some details that call for criticism. In the first place, specially cut type (such as that used, *e.g.* in Lowe's "*Codices Latini Antiquiores*") could have replaced with advantage the descriptions of some abbreviations, descriptions which, however good, can never be entirely adequate, *e.g.* the 'quam' symbol requires almost two lines of print ; and 'H-symbol' does not describe with any satisfactory accuracy the 'enim' *nota* of Insular script. The proof-reading has been rather careless, *e.g.* p. 44,

⁶ Bains, Doris. A Supplement to '*Notæ Latinæ*' (Abbreviations in Latin MSS. of 850-1050 A.D.). Cambridge, 1936.

B.M.Add.1185 should read 11852 ; p. 67, B.M.Cott.O XIII should read Cott. Otho E.xiii ; p. 70, under *Cambridge, University Library* the Juvenius MS. is Ff. IV. 42 not Ff. IV. 32. Where the symbols are of rare occurrence some folio references should have been given, as (*e.g.*) for the 'dc' *nota* of 'dixit' in B.M.Add.24142, a fat volume of triple-columned leaves in a very small hand. Two of the datings set down must be questioned. The generally accepted date of the "Book of Deer" (ignoring the additions) is X century, and after close examination of the MS. I see no reason to reject this in favour of the XI century date given by Miss Bains (p. 70). The date ascribed (pp. 3, 9, 71) to Cott. Vitellius C. viii, ff. 86-90 (*viz.* "sæc ix ex.") is little less than astonishing, especially when we find that the MS. from which these leaves come (*Cambridge, Trinity College, B.10.5*) is accepted by Lindsay ("Notæ Latinæ," p. 450) as *temp.* Bede. The date is almost certainly early VIII century and the MS. is included (rightly under *Trinity College, Cambridge*) by Lowe in his "Cod. Lat. Ant." (ii, no. 133). Miss Bains is apparently unaware of the relationship of the two MSS., and in view of the date its *notæ* are hardly relevant for the period 850-1050.

A noteworthy beginning has been made in the neglected field of Scottish palæography by the publication of a facsimile of the Chronicle of Melrose (Cott.MS.Faustina B.ix, ff. 2-75^b), and Dr. Anderson, who is already well known for his laborious and invaluable "Early Sources of Scottish History" (1922), has now put us further in his debt by undertaking (with his wife) the introduction and study of the MS.⁷ The imperative need for a new edition of this most important chronicle cannot even now be over-estimated, but with this fine facsimile available those unable to use the MS. itself may feel their disadvantage less keenly. The XIX century editions of this, as of many important mediæval documents, are bad and the examples of mis-

⁷ The Chronicle of Melrose. Collotype Facsimile, with Intro. by A. O. and M. O. Anderson, Index by W. C. Dickinson. (London School of Economics: Studies in Economics and Political Science, No. 100). London: Percy Lund, Humphries & Co. Ltd., 1936.

reading quoted by Anderson (p. ix) are more than sufficient to justify the severest censure. The very first instance quoted from Joseph Stevenson's edition for the Bannatyne Club (1835) provides us with an example of a phenomenon, alas, by no means rare,—the invention of some quite unknown (and often impossible) proper name through a misreading; on f. 25 (*s.a.* 1150) the MS. reads "Robertus comes Laicestriæ antea, die sancti Egidii, obiit": Stevenson transcribed this as "Robertus comes Laicestriæ, Anandie, sancti Egidii, obiit," mistaking the "ana" *nota* for "antea." Other examples will be found in Anderson's introduction⁸. The Chronicle was written up over a period of a hundred years. It is, I think, regrettable that Anderson did not keep to the official Museum foliation both for the introduction and the facsimile, thus avoiding the multiplication of references; no confusion could have resulted and direct reference to the MS. itself from the introduction would have been simplified. The MS. is examined in most minute detail, in such detail indeed that the introduction has become almost incomprehensible. One cannot avoid the feeling that it is a reprint of the editors' notebook rather than a carefully digested study of the problems connected with the MS. Some of the distinctions are over-nice; I find it difficult to see in ff. 59^b—60^b and 63 any convincing evidence in the very slight forward inclination of the script that the writer of them "sat well to the left, or used his left eye." The synopsis of the hands (pp. xxvii-lxxiv) is a most valuable preliminary to the study of the composition of the Chronicle, but until that study is made the full significance of these notes must remain uncertain, and the editors are rightly

⁸ A curious example of the same thing came to my notice recently in the 1846 ed. of Dugdale's *Monasticon Anglicanum*, iv, 80, in an abstract of a Clerkenwell Charter (Harl. Ch. 83, C. 26) in which the following phrase, "Jordanes Dominus illius fundi eius," is transcribed as "Jord. Ansillius fundi eius." How many students, one wonders, have searched for this imaginary Clerkenwell benefactor, Ansillius! The failing is not confined to editors of mediæval texts. A recent writer on Emily Brontë created an entirely imaginary lover for Emily by misreading the words "Love's Farewell" (Charlotte's pencilled title for one of her sister's poems) as "Louis Parensell" (Letter from C. W. Hatfield, *T.L.S.*, 29 August, 1936).

cautious in their comments on the authorship⁹. The variations in the hands employed, all presumably illustrative of the styles of writing in use in the Melrose scriptorium, are most interesting for the study of XIII century hands north of the Border.

Students of Germanic philology, as well as palæographers, will welcome the facsimile of the MSS. of Wulfila's Gothic translation of the Bible preserved in the *Ambrosian Library* at Milan published under the editorship of Professor Jan de Vries of Leyden¹⁰. The sub-title seems to imply that this is the first of a series devoted to facsimiles of the Ambrosian MSS., similar in purpose to the famous *Codices e Vaticanis Selecti* (the 1936 addition to which will be noticed immediately). The chief interest of the facsimile lies of course in the reproduction of the 4 Ambrosian MSS., all discovered about 1817 by Cardinal Mai, together with the 4 leaves found by Reifferscheid in 1866 in the binding of a "Regula S. Benedicti" of Bobbio provenance in the *Turin Library* (Cod. Taur. 161), which are actually part of MS.A.¹¹ All the MSS. are palimpsests. The chief facts were already well-known and had been set out briefly by Streitberg in the masterly introduction to his edition of the text ("Die Gotische Bibel," 1919). Professor de Vries analyses fully the make-up and the relationship of these Ambrosian MSS. and we must be grateful for the immense amount of material he was able to put together in spite of the haste with which, as he tells us, the work had to be done, though we must at the same time regret—as he himself did—that Streitberg's death in 1919 prevented that great scholar from editing this facsimile.

The 1936 volume of the series *Codices e Vaticanis*

⁹ The new transcript (pp. xxv-xxvi) of the important Verse Chronicle of the Scots scattered through the margins of the MS. is most welcome.

¹⁰ Wulfila Codicis Ambrosianæ Rescripti (Bibliothecæ Ambrosianæ Codices quam similime expressi). Edited by Prof. Jan de Vries. 3 Vols. in 2: Vol. i Intro.; Vols. ii and iii, Facsimile. Turin, 1936.

¹¹ For an interesting note upon the relationship of some of Cassiodorus' MSS. to Bobbio see H. Gornoll, "Zu Cassiodors Bibliothek und ihrem Verhältnis zu Bobbio," *Z.f.B.*, 53, Hft. 4 (April, 1936), pp. 185-9.

*Selecti*¹² is devoted to a MS. in the Palazzo Chigi Collection which, after becoming (in 1918) the property of the Italian Government, was transferred in 1923 by Signor Mussolini to the Holy See, thus passing into the *Vatican Library*. The subject of the MS. is the famous Chronicle of Giovanni Villani (c. 1275-1348), a work of the first importance for the mediæval history of Italy in general and of Florence in particular. Apart from the value of its subject-matter the interest of this late XIV century MS. (Chigi MS. L.VIII, 296) is further enhanced by the series of miniatures, which are important for the history of Florentine illumination. An analysis of this with special reference to the present MS. is the subject of Dr. Magnani's short introduction (pp. 9-21), which is followed by a description of the miniatures; the colour plate (I) gives an excellent impression of its style in the late XIV century. The script (double-columned) is good and the editor has distinguished two hands, but the textual importance of the MS. is unknown pending the preparation of a critical text of Villani¹³.

For students of French illumination¹⁴ interest in that "bon peintre et enlumineur du roi Louis XI, Jehan Foucquet, natif de Tours," and the problems of his work never fails; yet the greatness of his reputation in the XV

¹² Magnani, Luigi. *La Cronaca Figurata di Giovanni Villani: Ricerche sulla Miniatura Fiorentina del Trecento (Codd. e Vat. Sel., vol. xxiv)*. Città del Vaticano, 1936.

¹³ A portfolio of plates, accompanied by nearly 50 pages of descriptive notes, forming a complete corpus of known Exultet illumination was published towards the end of 1936 by the Princeton University Press, as one of the volumes in the series of "Illuminated MSS. of the Middle Ages" issued by the Department of Art and Archæology of that University. This portfolio is vol. ii of a study of The Exultet Rolls of South Italy by Myrtille Avery, the first volume of which, containing a full discussion of the subject, is to appear shortly. This notice must suffice until the publication of vol. i, when the work will be considered as a whole.

¹⁴ I know of no 1936 work in the field of Spanish illumination or palæography but a hunting treatise in the XV century Spanish MS. Add. 28709, has been reproduced (with a transcript, introduction, and notes) in its entirety (except for a few leaves at the end) by the Duque de Almazán, *Tratado de Monteria del Siglo XV*, Madrid, 1936. Perhaps reference should also be made here to Professor M. L. W. Laistner's paper, "The Spanish Archetype of MS. Harley 4980 (Bede's Exposition of Acts)", *Journal of Theological Studies*, vol. xxxvii (1936), pp. 132-7.

century was only equalled by the oblivion into which his work, and even his name, fell in the centuries that followed. In the early part of the XIX century, however, he was rediscovered and since then he has been the subject of increasing study. Miss Edith Greindl now wishes to add to the list of his works two pages of (3) miniatures in the possession of Baron de Decker at Brussels¹⁵. The date and original ownership of the leaves are established by a border inscription on the verso of the second leaf, which reads as follows: "Karolus de Francia, Karoli Septimi Filius, Northmannorum Dux Nonus, anno MCCCCLXV. Vivat." This Charles (d. 1472) was brother to Louis XI. Miss Greindl sets forth a number of reasons to show that these leaves originally formed part of another book associated with this same Duke, viz. an unfinished Book of Hours in the Bibliothèque Mazarine at Paris (MS. fr. 473), the first of the two miniatures of which ("The Kiss of Judas") has long been claimed as the work of Fouquet. On stylistic grounds the attribution is also well supported, but the not very distinct photographs make a decision from them impossible. The least convincing suggestion in Miss Greindl's paper is her interpretation of the "A.E." in the borders¹⁶.

The most important work in the study of illuminated MSS. I can, alas, do no more than notice; nothing less than a chapter could do justice to Hanns Swarzenski's study of Latin illuminated MSS. of the XIII century in the territories watered by the Rhine, the Danube, and the Main¹⁷. The chief centres of activity were Cologne, Aachen, Trier (Trèves), Regensburg (Ratisbon) and Salzburg, the dioceses

¹⁵ Greindl, E. "Three Miniatures ascribed to Jean Fouquet", *Burlington Mag.*, vol. lxi (1936), pp. 217-21.

¹⁶ I should like to call attention here to two very good facsimiles in colour published by the Verlag Bruckmann of Munich, the subject of each being XVI century Flemish Calendar illuminations; the two MSS. chosen are both from the *Staatsbibliothek* at Munich (cod. lat. 23638 and 28345). Each volume has a short introduction by Georg Leidinger.

¹⁷ Swarzenski, H. *Die Lateinischen Illuminierten Handschriften des XIII Jahrhunderts in den Ländern an Rhein, Main und Donau.* (Berlin, 1936). 2 vols.

of Basel, Constance, Bamberg, Eichstätt and Würzburg, and the introduction follows a geographical arrangement accordingly. Within each geographical section the study is strictly chronological and the development is traced with the greatest clarity, each step being admirably illustrated and theorising being avoided as much as possible. The reproductions are very good. Parallels with English work are noted and the evidence of other branches of contemporary art, such as that to be derived from stained glass, is not ignored in this most exhaustive study¹⁸.

German illumination is also represented by a paper, "The 'Visionary' Evangelists of the Reichenau School," in the December *Burlington Mag.* (vol. lxxix (1936), pp. 257-63), in which Mr. Charles Tolnay discusses the origin of the representation of the Evangelists in the Gospel Book of Otto III in the *Staatsbibliothek* at Munich (cod. lat. 4453) : the MS. is late X century. The Evangelists in this MS. are entirely different from the usual type in Western Miniatures (the "writing" Evangelist, about the origin of which there is now little dispute). The closest parallels to the Otto III miniatures are those in a quite independent but slightly later MS. in the *Vatican Library* (Cod. Barberini, lat. 711), where however the pose of the Evangelist, except for the raised arms, is clearly that of Christ as 'Rex Mundi' (cf. the Alcuin Bible, B.M.Add.MS. 10546, f. 352^b). The original motif of the composition Mr. Tolnay sees in the Greek and Roman representations of Coelus holding up the vault of heaven (see the breastplate in Plate I B), the "Mantle of Heaven" being replaced by a sphere. At the same time the spiritual significance of the composition is changed from the poetically inspired "writing" Evangelist to an Evangelist who is at once the upholder of the Kingdom

¹⁸ A good summary account of German illumination between 1350 and 1400 will be found in the relevant chapters in Alfred Stange's *Deutsche Malerei der Gotik*, vol. ii (Berlin, 1936). The first volume, covering the period 1250-1350, was published in 1934. The illustrations are well done and the value of the book is increased for us by the opportunities it gives of viewing the MS. illumination of the XIII and XIV centuries in relation to other branches of contemporary painting.

of Heaven and ruler of the earth. In its details the composition is obviously inspired by the Apocalypse¹⁹.

In the field of English illumination the only contribution is a paper on B. M. Royal MS. 15 D.ii by Mr. Donald Drew Egbert in *Speculum* (vol. xi (1936), pp. 447-52). This is not so good as Mr. Egbert's previous studies; its purpose is to show that the MS. has no connection with Greenfield Priory in Lincolnshire (a suggested provenance originally put forward apparently by Sir George Warner), but that it was produced in the neighbourhood of Nottingham for the wife of Sir Robert Welles in, or before, 1314/15. For the Welles connection he makes much use of the XV century list of wood sales on f. 215^b of the MS., but his theory remains an interesting hypothesis, nothing more. Otherwise, the paper adds nothing to what was already known and some of the plates illustrating the article are indifferent²⁰.

Important for students of diplomatic is a series of facsimiles of Carolingian charters inaugurated in 1936²¹. The first part contains 42 reproductions covering the period 753-812 and including 4 of Charlemagne's father, Pepin the Short, 5 of his brother, Carloman, and 19 of Charlemagne himself with one of his sister, Gisela; 8 are copies (3 of Pepin and 5 of Charlemagne), while 3 forgeries conclude the volume—2 Charlemagne fakes of IX century date and 1 original document, also of Charlemagne, falsified in the XII century. The facsimiles are not actual size but a very convenient uniform format has been adopted (namely, 44 cms. × 56 cms.), and a brief note on each document is

¹⁹ The MSS. emanating from the scriptorium of the monastery of SS. Peter and Paul at Erfurt are the subject of a monograph by Bernhard Wirtgen (*Die HSS. des Klosters St. Peter und Paul zu Erfurt bis zum Ende des 13. Jahrhunderts*), published 1936 by Harrassowitz at Leipzig. I hope to notice this in detail in *L.A.R.*

²⁰ An important and absorbing work concerned with the technicalities of mediæval illumination by Mr. D. V. Thompson, entitled *The Materials of Mediæval Painting* (London, 1936), enables us to approach mediæval illumination with a new appreciation of the difficulties involved and usually overcome.

²¹ Lot, F., and Lauer, P. *Diplomata Karolinorum: Recueil de reproductions en fac-similé des actes originaux des souverains carolingiens conservés dans les archives et bibliothèques de France. I. Pepin le Brev, Carloman, Charlemagne.* (Toulouse & Paris, 1936).

included in the list at the beginning; for full details and texts the student has, of course, Englebert Mühlbacher's "Diplomatum Karolinorum" in the *Monumenta Germaniæ Historica* (1906).

Levin and Munksgaard's series of facsimiles of Icelandic MSS., *Corpus Codicum Islandicorum Medii Aevi*, has now reached vol. ix; the 1936 volume is a reproduction of the Staðarhólsbók, containing the lawbooks, Grágás and Jarnsða, now MS. 334 fol. in the Arnarnagæan Collection in the *University Library, Copenhagen*: the introduction is by Ólafur Larússon. The title of the MS. is modern and is derived from the farm Staðarhóll in Saurbær in Iceland. The Grágás (ff. 1^b-92) and Jarnsða (ff. 92^b-108) portions are by different scribes; the MS. cannot be earlier than 1271, when Jarnsða was laid before the Alþing and partially adopted (to run only until 1281), and it may be ascribed to the last decade of the XIII century.

In conclusion I must notice two papers of general scope and interest. In an article entitled "The prices of books in mediæval England" (*The Library*, vol. xvii (1936), pp. 312-332) Mr. H. E. Bell has gathered together some interesting material, but a more discriminating use of his authorities (especially less reliance on secondary, and sometimes second-rate, ones) would have inspired his readers with more confidence in his work. The second paper²² describes a plan for a union catalogue of all the extant MSS. classified according to countries and giving only the briefest details. The main particulars of the scheme are due to Monsieur Seymour de Ricci, whose catalogue of MSS. in the U.S.A. and Canada may be regarded as a first step towards its realisation²³.

²² Verwey, H. de la Fontaine. "Het plan voor een Bibliotheca manuscriptorum nova," *BiLev.*, 21, 1936, pp. 153-162.

²³ A useful note upon 4 mediæval MSS. of East Anglian provenance acquired by the *University Library, Cambridge*, at the Hudson Gurney sale will be found in *The Cambridge Review*, vol. lvii (1936) p. 387, and in *The Durham University Journal* vol. xxx (1936), pp. 1-5, is a short article by Mr. Bertram Colgrave on the XII century Bede MS. recently purchased by the Dean and Chapter for the *Durham Chapter Library*.

as we had rather hoped to do this year ; we look forward to a time when it may be possible to base our remarks concerning the *United States* on information prepared specially in that country ; and it is particularly desirable that this article should include news from time to time of Archive activities in *British Dominions and Colonies*. There is evidence that in some of these work in our subject is beginning to assume important proportions ; the *Union of South Africa*, where we hear of new building and other re-organisation, furnishes a notable example ; we have had recent evidence of activity in *Rhodesia* ; the interest of the *Ceylon Government* has been shown during this year by its representation at the Annual Conference of the British Records Association and in another way to be mentioned below ; *Maltese* history and Archives are engaging the attention of a Special Committee ; and a number of other evidences of activity have come to hand incidentally since our last compilation was made.

While we have for the moment only good intentions to proffer in this connexion, we may welcome at least one new contributor from the Continent : *Vienna* had achieved, before the War, the creation of a particularly fine Central Archive Repository ; and we are glad to fill this year a recognised gap by including some news from that famous centre of Archive work. From *Holland*, which occupies a very honourable position in the history of the development of Archive Science, we had also hoped to receive news ; the pleasure is, we trust, only deferred. On the other hand, we must deplore here the absence of any return from *Spain* ; for the moment more immediate calamities overshadow the question of the fate of Archives in that Country, but if they have suffered (and the history of civil disturbances elsewhere makes it appear only too probable) their loss or damage will presently be reckoned not the least of the misfortunes resulting from the present war. Meanwhile, all practical work on Spanish Archives, which a year or two ago was developing strongly, is presumably at a standstill.

THE BRITISH RECORDS ASSOCIATION

We are glad to be able to report that growth in the membership of our Association—a vital matter in the early years of an institution whose chief aim is to induce co-operation—has been proceeding very satisfactorily. At the Annual Meeting in November, 1936, the President was able to comment on the fact that during its fourth year it had added over forty Institutional members to its list—including Local Authorities, Colleges and Schools, Religious Bodies, Publishing Societies and three great American Universities—and seventy new Individual Members. On the other hand, he had to deplore the loss by death of its best known Member and first President, Viscount Hanworth. Lord Hanworth may be said to have lent the Association the weight of his help and authority even before it came into formal existence; for he advised and assisted in the drafting of its constitution; and during the first years of its existence he was constant in counsel and in practical aid.

Needless to say, it is not only in the Association that the loss caused by Viscount Hanworth's death to Archive work in this Country will be felt. It chanced that his appointment as Master of the Rolls coincided nearly with the Amendment to Lord Birkenhead's Act (1924) which by giving to the holder of that office the charge and superintendence of Manorial Records established for the first time an official connexion between the head of the Central Archive Establishment in this Country and Local Archives. Moreover, it became necessary, almost inevitably, for the Master of the Rolls to "recognise" Local Repositories: and since the Repositories thus stimulated to action (or in some cases specially created) have in general opened their doors to all kinds of documents, in addition to the strictly Manorial ones, an indirect result of the Act has been the solution of a problem which had baffled generations of local enthusiasts anxious for the preservation of Deeds and historical evidences of all kinds. The direction of some movement of this kind might have fallen to any occupant of the Office of Master of the Rolls; but the personal inter-

est, and indeed devotion, with which Lord Hanworth fostered it, were all his own ; and his name will long be remembered in this connexion. Incidentally, the creation of these local centres of Archive interest did much to make our own Association a practical possibility.

The Association has been fortunate in having, as its second President, Lord Hanworth's successor in the office of Master of the Rolls, Lord Wright ; but as we go to Press comes news of further changes and we shall shortly be welcoming, in turn, Lord Wright's successor, Sir Wilfrid Greene.

The Annual Conference in November, 1936, was very well attended. The morning was spent in a meeting of the Records Preservation Section, at which the general subject of Manorial Records was introduced for discussion by Miss Joan Wake (Northamptonshire) and was followed by the question of training or instruction for the amateur Archivist. On both of these there was a good debate, and a resolution sent up to the Council of the Association on the question of a possible Summer School will be implemented this August by an arrangement under which the Library Association's Summer School at Birmingham will be thrown open to our Members. At the Conference proper in the afternoon, Professor Stenton, Dr. Previté-Orton (Editor of the *English Historical Review*) and Professor Bellot (Secretary of the Royal Historical Society) spoke on the subject of the publication of Records by Societies and other local bodies ; the background of this debate being a survey of such volumes compiled by Miss Margery Fletcher. This was followed by a discussion on the charging of Fees in Local Repositories, which was opened by Dr. Fowler (Chairman of the Records Committee of Bedfordshire) and Mr. Josiah Green (Town Clerk of Bristol). In the evening the hospitality of the Merchant Taylors' Company provided a delightful Reception at their Hall and interesting Exhibitions there showed not only the Records of the Company, and a collection of documents recently handled by the Preservation Section of the Association, but also a remarkable collection of Commercial Records, arranged

by the Council for the Preservation of Business Archives in co-operation with Semi-Public and Private Owners; these including the Bank of England, Hoare's Bank, the London Assurance, the Hudson's Bay Company and a number of other important bodies and private firms.

An account of the above (including Miss Fletcher's Survey) has since been published (*Proceedings, Number 2*). Apart from this, the *Annual Report of Council*, and the separate *Report of the Records Preservation Section*, there have been no further publications since we last wrote; but further *Reports from Committees*, including proposals for a standard scheme for *Cataloguing Deeds*, are on the way. The Association, it may be noted, has now a price-list for the sale of extra copies of its publications to Members.

The Report of the Records Preservation Section lists some forty donors and depositors of documents and a like number of Repositories to which documents were transmitted during the period under review.

THE PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE

From the Record Office, for the reason indicated in our opening paragraph, there is little to report this year, though the publication of further volumes from the *Fine Rolls*, *Liberate Rolls* and *Journal of Trades and Plantations* may be noted. The Annual Report of the Deputy Keeper will appear after this chronicle; but it is not anticipated that it will include any startling change in regard to the figures of production in the Public Search Rooms, nor much new matter concerning the conduct of the Museum during the past year or the routine transfer of documents from Public Departments. It may be of interest, however, to note the fact that recent *Special Exhibitions* in the Museum have included collections illustrating certain aspects of Local History, one for the Tyndale Quater-centenary, one of the documents to be returned to Scotland, one for the Sex-centenary of the creation of the Duchy of Cornwall and, of course, one for the Coronation; and, among *Transfers*, the arrangements proposed for the return to Edinburgh of

certain documents carried off by Edward I certainly claim attention as an abnormal happening. Proposals for such a transfer raise necessarily interesting points of principle and when made upon a larger scale, or in respect of more important Archives, are bound to give rise (and have given rise, for example, in the matter of the Schleswig-Holstein Archives) to highly complicated discussion and the consideration of conflicting interests and points of view.

The *Repository* and *Repair* Departments of the Office have little fresh information to offer. The first is continually experimenting in matters of Make-up, Packing and Shelving, and in this connexion the completion of a new survey of the state of repair and make-up of the whole Office, a considerable piece of work, is perhaps worthy of special note: but in general the scale is small; progress goes by slow stages; and there is nothing to record at present beyond a continuation of work on the lines mentioned last year, particularly in the matter of Air Circulation. The Repair Department also has no fresh inventions or new devices worthy of special mention. Both the departments continue to have many visitors, from local, private and occasionally foreign Archives, asking for advice; in particular there is an increasing number of requests for permission to see the Office's methods of repair in action, from Archivists and Amateurs anxious to see how far such work could be undertaken locally. In this connexion we may mention that an Archivist pupil from Ceylon (sent by the Government of that Country) has succeeded the American student of last year in temporary membership of the Repairing Staff. The assistance to Local and Private Archives by the actual execution of repairs at the Record Office will be mentioned below in another connexion.

OTHER NATIONAL ACTIVITIES

*The British Museum*¹

During the year 1936, the Museum acquired some 90

¹ We are indebted for the substance of this note to Mr. B. Schofield, who acknowledges the assistance of Mr. C. T. Lamacraft on the technical side.

"Manuscripts" and 168 "Charters and Rolls": a list of the more important will appear in due course in the *Bulletin* of the Institute of Historical Research. They include *Registers* of Blackborough and Eye Priors; a *Rental* of Little Wymondley Priory; *Building Accounts* of Kirby Muxloe Castle; papers concerning the provision of new *Regalia for the Coronation of Charles II*; a further collection of *Private Papers* of the Oxenden family; a *Publisher's Stock Book* of Daniel Midwinter and Aaron Ward, of 1732; a *List of Manuscripts and Records* bought by Sir Simonds D'Ewes; and ten volumes of watermarks: there are thirty *Court and Compotus Rolls* (15th and 16th centuries) from the Archives of the Earls of Stafford and Dukes of Buckingham; and among the *Charters and Deeds* are a copy of a supposed forged document of William I, an original grant by Henry II to Battle Abbey, a deed of Abbot Samson of Bury St. Edmunds, and 18 deeds relating to the Chiswick Press.

Considerable work has been done in the *Description and Indexing* of recently acquired MSS. and Charters and it is hoped so soon as departmental work will permit, to commence the preparation of a third volume of the *Index to Charters and Rolls in the British Museum*; to cover documents acquired since the publication of the second volume (1912) and the present day.

On the *Technical Side*, the most notable feature is a new studio now in course of erection in the Department of MSS.; besides work upon papyri and other activities not directly interesting the Archivist this will provide a place for the repair of Seals, etc.² It is intended, as soon as the new studio is ready, to place all Charters bearing seals in separate boxes and to arrange all moulds (many of them over 100 years old) in new cabinets, so far as the routine work of the Department allows.

The two *Ultra-Violet Light* cabinets in use up to now have been superseded by a S.500 type Hanovia-Muir

² Ordinary Repairs, Guarding, Binding, etc., of Documents are carried out in the Museum Bindery under the instructions of Departmental Officers.

analytic lamp. Though this has not yet been fully tested it is anticipated that, with a greatly increased power and spread of the beam of light, it will give improved results in aid of the deciphering of faded or erased writing.

*The Manorial Records Committee*³

The Master of the Rolls' Register of Manors and Manorial Documents made considerable progress in 1936 and now contains the names of more than 23,000 Manors, with information of Records of some 10,500 of these. Inventories of Manorial Documents were received, from Repositories for upwards of 200 Manors, and from private persons for about 100 more. There were numerous requests for information as to the whereabouts of the Documents of particular Manors and the Authority concerned notes that it would add greatly to the usefulness of the Register if Repositories would report their accessions to the Public Record Office (on the form prescribed by the Manorial Documents Rules, 1926) with as little delay as possible.

*The Historical MSS. Commission*⁴

The second section (Lever—Z) of the *Guide* to the Reports of the Commission, 1870-1911, which was mentioned in our survey last year has not yet been issued, but is on the eve of publication.

Other publications which are nearly ready are volume XVII of the Report on the MSS. of the Marquess of Salisbury and a supplementary Report on the MSS. of the Earl of Lindsey. The former covers the year 1605 and is practically a volume of abstracts of State Papers : although it includes the actual date of the Gunpowder Plot, the more interesting papers connected with that conspiracy will be in the succeeding volume. The Lindsey volume contains some personal correspondence of the Osborne family, valuable estimates of the Royal Revenue during the time when the

³ We have to thank Mr. P. V. Davies, Secretary to the Manorial Records Committee, for this note.

⁴ We have to thank Mr. S. C. Ratcliff, Secretary to the Commission, for this note.

Earl of Danby was Lord Treasurer, the papers of the Mission of Charles Bertie to Denmark in 1671, and a Diary kept by Charles Bertie during a visit to the Continent between 1660 and 1662.

*The Medieval Latin Dictionary*⁵

The Committee has suffered a great loss by the sudden death of Professor W. M. Lindsay, of St. Andrew's University, one of its original members. When the Committee was created he was one of those who welcomed its formation most enthusiastically; and he not only gave to it the lustre of his name and world-wide reputation, but from the beginning was active in the enlistment of readers for the national undertaking and in the support through the *Bulletin Du Cange* of the international project. By his death the Committee is deprived of the help of one whose prime concern was the history of the Latin language and whose chief labour was devoted to its study.

The collection of materials has steadily continued, though the number of readers remains small, and considerable help is still needed in the reading of scientific and other works with technical vocabularies. The reading of Domesday Book has almost been completed, and it is hoped that the whole of the pre-Conquest material will have been read before the end of this year.

Professor C. H. Beeson has been appointed Chairman and Secretary to the American Committee of the Dictionary in succession to the late Professor J. F. Willard.

INSTITUTE OF HISTORICAL RESEARCH⁶

The principal event of the past year was the holding at the Institute of the fourth quinquennial Anglo-American Conference of Historians (mentioned by anticipation in our last issue) in July, 1936. The Local History Section

⁵ For this note we have to thank Mr. H. C. Johnson, Secretary to the English Committee.

⁶ We have to thank Mr. Guy Parsloe, Secretary and Librarian of the Institute, for this contribution.

of the Conference devoted one of its sessions to a discussion on Local Records, at which Miss E. M. Hampson spoke on those of Parishes and Professor A. H. Dodd on Business Records, while Dr. D. A. Chart described the working of the Record Office of Northern Ireland.

The British Museum arranged a special exhibition of manuscripts of historical interest acquired since the meeting of the last Conference in 1931, and special facilities for the examination of Records were accorded to members by the Public Record Office, the City (Guildhall) Records Office, the Muniment Room and Library of Westminster Abbey, the Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in Foreign Parts, the Order of St. John of Jerusalem, and the Hudson's Bay Company. Members were also privileged to examine Records on their visits to the Houses of Parliament, Lincoln's Inn, Mercers' Hall, and other places. A full account of the Conference, including summaries of the papers and discussions, was printed in the *Bulletin* of the Institute for November, 1936 (Vol. XIV, No. 41).

The *Bulletin* has continued to publish Lists of Historical Manuscripts acquired by the principal Repositories in Great Britain and notes upon manuscripts offered for sale. Progress was also made during the year with the bibliography of Catalogues of Manuscripts in British Repositories, public and private, which Mr. Seymour de Ricci is compiling under the auspices of the Institute: this bibliography is intended to be preliminary to an exhaustive Survey of British Manuscript Collections and the means of reference to them; the plan for which is outlined in a memorandum by Mr. de Ricci, which will shortly be published in the Institute's *Bulletin*.

Towards the close of the year, the Committee approved proposals for the completion of the Index of Palæographical Facsimiles in the Institute's library, which was begun some years ago with voluntary labour. The facsimiles are being indexed under the towns and collections in which the originals are to be found. The cards also record the date, language, subject, or nature, country of origin, and school

or type of writing of the document, and it is intended later to construct subsidiary indexes which will enable students at the Institute readily to find facsimiles of any given type of MS. The scheme for the index was explained in the Institute's *Bulletin* for November, 1923 (Vol. 1. No. 2).

The Sub-Committee on Accessibility of Archives and Migrations of Historical Manuscripts, for which the Institute acts as executive has put in hand an enquiry as to Parish Records. Circulars have been addressed to all Archdeacons, asking what steps have been taken to list and control the Parish Records within their jurisdiction and whether in case no adequate steps have been taken they would be prepared to grant facilities for such action by local or other agencies interested.

The Institute has also been able in the past year to give some assistance to a number of other bodies interested in Archive questions. Thus the Committee was pleased to give to the Archives of Malta Committee the same facilities which are being enjoyed by the British Records Association and the Council for the Preservation of Business Archives, namely an address and a limited amount of office accommodation. Archives also figured in the work of a special sub-committee of the Institute Committee which was set up at the request of the British National Committee of Historical Sciences to answer the enquiries of the International Commission on Bibliographical Abbreviations. The questions covered many matters of interest in connexion with the citation of Manuscripts and the correct description of the more important British Archives; the Sub-Committee's report has been transmitted to the International Commission and it is hoped that it may be printed at a later date.

ARCHIVE WORK BY LOCAL AUTHORITIES, LIBRARIES AND PRIVATE BODIES

Introduction

The marked increase in the number of Institutional Members of the Association made possible wider cir-

cularisation than in any previous year for the purpose of obtaining returns concerning Record activities carried out since the last review, but unfortunately, owing no doubt to the very short notice which had to be given, fewer replies than usual have been received. The variety and interest of the matters described in those which have reached us suggest that equally helpful and valuable information might have been received from the remainder had time permitted. Mention may here be made of those returns which reported nothing beyond the usual activities for the areas to which they related ; it must be noted, however, that this general statement covers continuance of much expert and important work. Returns on these lines were received from Chester, Coventry, Croydon, Eastbourne, County of the Isle of Ely, Guildhall Library (City of London), Hendon, Hull, Kesteven, Liverpool, Manchester, Mitcham, Norfolk, Northampton (Library), Nottingham, Preston, St. Marylebone and Walthamstow.

Buildings

From several places where provision of new or extended accommodation for Records was described last year come reports of continued progress towards completion. Three important Repositories still in course of construction are those of Essex, Hertfordshire and Surrey County Councils. The strong-rooms at Hertford will be three, Sessions, Manorial and Diocesan : a Search Room, Clerk's Room and Repair Room will also be provided. No return has been made from Kent County Council, but construction is, it is understood, far advanced at Maidstone.

Of Record Rooms which have been completed and are now in use, interesting details have been received from several areas. The County Palatine of Chester, as to which report was made last year, also has its new Record Office divided into three distinct sections—making departments for County Council, Clerk of the Peace and Registration. Gloucestershire County Council has had constructed, as part of an extension to the Shire Hall, Record Rooms covering

a space of about 1,100 square feet ; they are fitted with steel shelving and cupboards, are warmed and ventilated and have electric lighting and they were brought into use on 1st June last. The following month saw the formal opening by the Master of the Rolls of the Record Rooms of Oxfordshire County Council. Provision by the Libraries Committee of a fire-resisting strong-room for historical documents is reported also from Wigan.

Extension plans in a number of places include the possibility of important new provision for Records. For example, it is hoped that the further extensions to the County buildings in Gloucestershire will allow of additional room for Records together with a Library and a room for Students : in Lancaster extensions to the Library and Museum which will include accommodation for storage of Archives are suggested : in the return from the Council of the Parts of Lindsey, arrangements for the adaptation of an old Maternity Home to use as a Museum (replacing a small room in the Town Hall used hitherto) are reported as nearing completion : and plans for new municipal buildings for Tunbridge Wells with appropriate storage accommodation for Records have been the subject of a recent Ministry of Health inquiry.

In addition we have new notes of existing accommodation in several places : from Blackburn comes a helpful description of the strong-room for MSS. at the Public Library, and from Canterbury particulars of the housing of the Burghmote and other Records at the Royal Museum and Library, and Shrewsbury sends interesting details as to the housing of Borough and deposited documents.

Publications

Reports of the continued issue of transcripts, calendars, inventories or hand-lists, indexes and works on special subjects reach us in increasing numbers and are too numerous for detailed mention. Specially interesting projects include the proposed issue of transcripts of Marriage Licences to continue the unofficial series of Parish Registers published

from the Bedfordshire Record Office ; the possible formation of a Records Publication Branch of the Buckinghamshire Archæological Society ; the preparation of calendars of their Manorial documents for Essex County Council ; arrangements by the Northamptonshire Record Society for publication in about three years' time of Dugdale's *Book of Seals*, to be edited by Mr. Lewis Lloyd ; compilation under an editorial committee of a history of Sandwich ; and the preparation of a volume of early Lambeth Churchwardens' Accounts by the Surrey Record Society with the financial support of the Borough. We have also to welcome the forthcoming issue by Somerset County Council of its first Record publication, being an *Inventory of Parochial Documents in the Diocese of Bath and Wells*, prepared by Dr. J. E. King ; and note with particular satisfaction the inauguration of a Scheme whereby the Hudson's Bay Company in conjunction with the Champlain Society of Toronto, Canada, will publish each year, under the editorship of Mr. E. E. Rich, one volume of a Hudson's Bay Company Series containing material from the Company's Archives : this is in addition to the extension of the Company's classification scheme and the continued progress made with its detailed Class List.

Publications dealing with *Administrative Work* continue as yet few in number, but Gloucester and Somerset County Councils have each issued pamphlets on the importance of preserving Local Records. *Inventories* and *Hand-lists* are reported chiefly by the Libraries, since their equipment is specially suitable for this type of work. Official work by Local Authorities in this direction is small, at any rate in published form, though what has appeared is of great informative value. In this connexion an interesting suggestion has reached us from Newport to the effect that in view of the problem raised by greatly increasing accessions coupled with a lack of trained archivists or sufficient staffs, consideration might be given to the idea of a central bureau where collections could be sent for calendaring at a reasonable rate.

Scientific Research and Repair

Extreme pressure of work on the cataloguing of Records is probably responsible in a number of cases for preventing full attention being given to the physical needs of documents, and while it is not our business here to press for a reversal of this order of priority, we may be allowed to welcome signs of an increasing tendency to give attention to the physical side. In places where Record Offices are being newly established or re-established, the problems of preliminary organisation naturally take precedence; Gloucestershire, Leyton and Southampton may be cited as places where such general establishment is proceeding. In these cases scientific treatment is involved over questions of re-storage; for example, removal of their Records from the basement of the County Hall in Essex, has been a means of checking the spread of mildew, and from the same County comes the report of teak laths being used with the open steel shelving installed to prevent contact of documents and metal. The general question of ventilation and the prevention of mildew is also known to be receiving attention at Kingston and Northampton.

Repair Work

Repairs by professional workers, such as the Repairing Staff of the Public Record Office, continue to be carried out for a number of Local Repositories. Thus the Corporations of Bristol, Dover, Ipswich, Lichfield, Lincoln, Norwich and a number of other towns are known to have had important work of this kind in hand recently and the same may be said of the Counties of Chester, Northampton, Sussex and Warwick; of the Dean and Chapter of Canterbury; of a number of private or semi-public institutions such as the Bank of England, St. Bartholomew's Hospital, Hoare's Bank, Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, the Merchant Taylors' Company and the William Salt Library; and of a few Parishes. The comprehensive work being done for Chester is particularly noteworthy. In addition work-rooms for repair and provision for local

treatment of documents are increasing. Bristol Corporation now has its smaller repairs, such as sizing and mending, carried out by the staff of the Archives Department; Somerset County Council has equipped a work-room, and a repair assistant has been appointed for a period of two years; the William Salt Library has facilities in its new building for carrying out simple repair operations; and we hear of similar work at Boston, Canterbury, and Leicester and in some London Repositories. In Bedfordshire, where the County Record Office has become so comprehensive and important a centre of Archive work, and where scientific method and treatment of Records are so far advanced, a temporary repair assistant has been appointed so as to release the Clerk and his assistant for the work of cataloguing and arranging accessions.

Photographic Reproduction of documents for outside use is an interesting part of the normal activity reported from the John Rylands Library, Manchester; the County Surveyor of Oxfordshire has installed a photostat machine for the general purposes of the County Council, thus giving the County Record Office most useful facilities for reproduction; and Somerset County Council is at present giving consideration to methods of reproduction of Records for the sake of better preservation of originals and increased facilities for reference.

Accessibility to Students

Under this heading we may group information of three kinds: it relates to *Accessions*, *Catalogues* (other than printed ones) and *Conditions of Consultation*.

Almost every return reports continued receipt of *Accessions*, often in increasing numbers; this is especially noted from Birmingham. Even where provision for cataloguing or other work is deficient, deposit is everywhere being encouraged as a means to preservation. Our space does not allow of detailed description, but we may note three particularly striking matters: first, that where numbers are reported none are under four figures; next, that the Asso-

ciation's circular letter to Solicitors is still being used with valuable results ; and finally that information or copies of lists of accessions are being increasingly exchanged between neighbouring repositories in certain localities, especially in the County of Essex. As exemplifying systematic collection (as distinct from acceptance) mention may be made of the work accomplished in Bedfordshire, where all known Overseers', Surveyors', and Constables' Records, and almost all of those of Petty Sessions, have now been collected into the County Repository : a special note is added to this return stating that the condition in which certain of these documents were found suggests that there may be urgent need for similar work in other areas ; or at least for collection into dry places, if the Records cannot at present be dealt with in detail.

Special *Cataloguing and Copying work* for complete collections is being carried out, to the great benefit of students, in Coventry and Shrewsbury and for the Wiltshire Archaeological and Natural History Society. Calendaring of documents for the Borough of Hove continues to be made possible by a Committee grant to cover expenses. By permission of the Archbishop of Canterbury, Mr. James is continuing his valuable work for Medical Records by transcribing the Licences to practise medicine and surgery granted by the Archbishops : these transcripts will be preserved with those of the Barber Surgeons' Apprentice Books, in the library of the Royal College of Surgeons. We note also a complete series of typed calendars of the documents of the Corporation of Wigan, which have now been made available for Students at the Public Library there : and, as usual, important work on the cataloguing of Deeds is reported by the Yorkshire Archaeological Society.

That every facility is given to genuine *Students and Searchers* is stated in all returns containing information under this heading ; and that this readiness to give help is appreciated, the number of visits and enquiries reported proves. Several places such as Bedfordshire County Council, the Northamptonshire Record Society and the Council of the Parts of

Lindsey, cater for school children also, by arranging informative exhibitions and talks.

Fees (a matter which engaged the attention of the Association's last Conference) are mentioned in one case only, that of Shrewsbury, where a charge of 2s. 6d. for the first hour and 1s. an hour or part of an hour thereafter is made : this fee is frequently remitted in the case of research students, a policy rapidly becoming common in Repositories where fees are still charged. Enquiries by post are referred to once or twice, though it appears to be usual for advice to be given rather than work undertaken in connexion with this method of approach.

A suggestion comes from the William Salt Library that the facilities now offered students in Repositories would be put to yet more profitable use if definite instruction in historical method were part of all students' training ; it is in fact a little remarkable that official connexion between provincial Universities and local Record Repositories appears to be rare, since two instances only are mentioned in our returns—from Hull and Nottingham. From Essex comes a further suggestion that systematic study of particular subjects is the chief need, that is to say organised, as opposed to sporadic, research.

Visits from students studying Archive methods are mentioned in the return of the Hudson's Bay Company.

General Organisation and Policy

Widening Archive activity on organised lines grows increasingly evident. Acceptance of accessions in order to preserve local material, and their cataloguing, continue (as may be judged from what we have already said) a common policy ; and understanding of the need for making Records accessible to students appears general : from Cheshire, Coventry, Essex, Hertfordshire and Wigan comes special emphasis on the necessity of this last. Treatment of official Archives is rarer at present (to judge from our returns) ; and though the number of Local Government Authorities taking action in regard to Records is growing, this often

covers admission of outside material rather than attention to the official collections. The latter, however, where special attention is being given to them, are undoubtedly receiving very thorough care ; which includes new accommodation, modern storage equipment, and repair, as well as official cataloguing. On the other hand, one or two returns express the fear that amassing of accessions and the undertaking of wide-spread activities may be detrimental to sound workmanship ; especially in places where technical workers are lacking or staffs are small.

Interesting special items are reported from a number of places. For example, the educational side of Record work is being developed in addition to the fostering of general interest by Exhibitions ; thus in Bedfordshire exhibitions are often combined with talks for special purposes at the visits of Schools, local Societies, and Teachers' Training College students ; in Northamptonshire the educational status of the Record office has received much consideration and the lively interest taken in Record work in that County is attributed directly to the publicity work carried on ; and in Oxfordshire talks are given to Teachers working on village surveys and to University students on Inclosure Awards. From Macclesfield and Somerset comes report of similar policy with regard to exhibitions, and Essex County Council has also inaugurated a more active policy in regard to research.

Certain Boroughs authorise treatment of their Archives by the local Record or Archæological Societies ; this usually includes a financial arrangement which fosters local effort and an amount of cataloguing work not otherwise easily obtainable ; Southampton is one of the places where the local Record Society is doing valuable work for local Official Archives. Special steps for the collection of Inclosure Awards are reported from Oxfordshire ; here, as also in Warwickshire, typed copies are given to depositors in exchange.

Records as to which information is frequently not available are those of Parishes, especially on the Ecclesiastical side.

However, as we have noted, Somerset County Council is issuing shortly an inventory of Parochial Documents, Civil and Ecclesiastical, in the Diocese of Bath and Wells; of which copies will be distributed free to Incumbents and others while more will be available by purchase; and we may add that Oxfordshire has made preliminary arrangements for a survey of Parish Records in which it is hoped that the Ecclesiastical may be included, and that the question was raised at the Annual Meeting of the Sussex Archæological Society. But perhaps the most progressive news in this direction comes from Lincolnshire, where the Lord Bishop of Lincoln, with the help of Historical Societies and County Councils, has taken steps to carry out a comprehensive survey. After classification proper steps are to be taken for the preservation of the documents.

From the same area comes an interesting report of the official examination of a number of Collections in Private Custody and in Solicitors' Offices; advice being given as to means of preservation. As we remarked last year, this advisory method, in addition to the knowledge of local sources which it establishes, does invaluable work by spreading interest in and care for Records.

IRELAND

Public Record Office of the Irish Free State⁷

The Fifty-Seventh Report of the Deputy Keeper on the Proceedings had in 1929 and 1930 was published in 1936. In it the listing of the entries in the Testamentary, Matrimonial and Ecclesiastical Records salved in 1922 is completed. The memorandum on the Sir Cyril Wicke documents, purchased at Messrs. Sotheby's sale in June, 1930, illustrates how the high officials in Ireland took away their papers and Official Records on giving up office.

Further purchases of Irish documents were made at the sale of the Phillipps MSS. in 1936 and a large number of presentations continues to be made by Solicitors and others

⁷ We are indebted to Mr. J. J. Morrissey, Assistant Deputy Keeper of the Public Records (Ireland), for this note.

with a view to replacing what was destroyed in 1922. The type, text and translation of volume IV of the Early Statutes of Ireland were destroyed in the fire at Messrs. Browne and Nolan's Printing Works, but fortunately a set of the Book Proofs passed for press were in the Record Office.

The following volumes were published for the *Irish MSS. Commission* in 1936: *Irish Monastic and Episcopal Deeds, 1200-1600* (Ormond Collection), edited by Newport B. White; *Letters and Papers relating to the Irish Rebellion, 1642-6*, edited by Professor James Hogan; the *Composition Booke of Connaught* (from transcript in the British Museum), edited by A. Martin Freeman; *Register of the Hospital of S. John the Baptist, Dublin*, edited by Eric St. John Brooks; and *Commentarius Rinuccianus, 1645-9*, Vol. II, edited by the Rev. Father Stanislaus, Ord. Min. Cap.

*Northern Ireland*⁸

The Report of the Deputy Keeper of the Records for 1936 has not yet appeared. It is understood that it will contain the usual reports on manuscripts deposited by private individuals or lent for transcription or photography. It will also deal with matters of general Irish historical interest or special Ulster application in the State Papers relating to Ireland for the years 1734 and 1735 in the Public Record Office, London. Of these a calendar of 16,000 words has been made, with verbatim extracts where desirable. Volume I of the Papers of Thomas Pelham, 1776-1783, in the British Museum, has been similarly treated, the calendar in this case reaching to about 57,000 words; during part of this period Pelham was secretary to the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland.

Volume II of the Elizabethan *Letters relating to Ireland* in the Library of Cambridge University has been calendared, and photostat copies have been made of the most important unpublished documents which it contains.

⁸ We have to thank Dr. D. A. Chart, Deputy Keeper of the Records of Northern Ireland, for this note.

The Office has further acquired and will report on an extensive collection of notes made by Richard Dobbs, Dean of Connor in 1785, from Carrickfergus Municipal Records, which were then available; these extend over the period 1569-1747.

SCOTLAND⁹

A fragment of a *Melting Journal* of the Scottish Mint for the year 1568, which was in private custody, has been purchased by Treasury Authority: the earliest of these Journals previously known in the Register House commences in 1673, but there are accounts of bullion delivered which go back to 1556.

In addition to the usual annual *Transmissions* of Legal and Departmental Records the following important collections of historical manuscripts were deposited.

(1) Books and Papers of the Hudson's Bay Company, including volumes of original letters and documents of the North West Company, 1791-1816, and Trappers' Journals and letters, etc., from 1823 onwards: these were deposited by the Trustees of the first Lord Strathcona.

(2) The Collection of Original Charters and other legal documents for the years 1165-1911 formed by the Society of Antiquaries of Scotland, which have been deposited on permanent loan by the Society: an Inventory of these has been prepared and is available for consultation.

In connexion with a survey of Royal Letter Books which has been undertaken, Lady Binning deposited temporarily in the Register House a Letter Book of James V for the years 1526-48 which is preserved at Tynninghame House: a Calendar of the contents has been made and is now available for students.

The following volumes of the series of *Scottish Record Publications* were issued: *Calendar of Scottish Papers*, X (1589-1593) and XI (1593-1595); and *Registrum Secreti Sigilli Regum Scotorum* III (1542-1548).

⁹ We have to thank Mr. William Angus, Keeper of the Registers and Records of Scotland, for this contribution.

WALES¹⁰

The National Library of Wales continues to attract important collections of Family Papers, Estate Documents, and Ecclesiastical and Industrial Records. The chief *Collections Received* during the year were the Glansevern Papers, which, in addition to family Correspondence and Deeds mainly of Montgomeryshire properties, include a fine series of Naval Log Books, 1750-1775; the Crawshay Papers, including Correspondence of pioneers of South Wales ironworks; the Nevill Records of copper smelting and coal mining in the Swansea and Llanelly districts; the Evans and Bevan Records of anthracite collieries in the Vale of Neath; the Bodrhyddan Papers relating to the Manor of Rhuddlan; and an addition to the Pitchford Hall Manuscripts by the deposit of a group of letters of Browne Willis to Bishop Ottley, 1716-1723.

A number of typewritten *Schedules of Deposited Collections* was made during the year. The Library's series of schedules is now so extensive that subject and county guides to them have to be prepared in order to facilitate the work of research students. Lists of Manorial Records, of Agricultural Manuscripts, and of Cærnarvonshire Manuscripts and Records were issued during the year. A "List of Industrial and Trade Records" was begun, and the sections which have been completed have saved students of economic history in Wales much time in the collection of their material.

Advice and Assistance was, as usual, given to custodians of Civil and Ecclesiastical Records in the matter of preserving and arranging their documents; and the facilities provided by the Library's private bindery were again placed at the disposal of Authorities who had early Records in need of expert attention; *Photostat Copies* of all Records thus repaired at the Library were made and retained for the use of students. During 1936 the Monmouth Borough Records were repaired and rebound, while work was also

¹⁰ We have to thank the Librarian of the National Library, Mr. W. Llewelyn Davies, for this contribution.

begun on the Records of the Boroughs of Montgomery and Brecon. Several Parish Registers, too, were repaired, and photostat copies of them were made.

AMERICA

We shall refer this year to only three publications, issued since we last wrote ; especially as the first and most important contains, incidentally, bibliographical reference to a good many more. This is the *Second Annual Report of the Archivist of the United States*, a volume of over 100 pages with a number of illustrations. Archivists in Europe will find great interest in studying a work constructed obviously on a carefully considered plan after close study of the work of older institutions elsewhere ; they will probably be somewhat staggered by the size of everything (for example, the Chief of Repair boldly envisages the preliminary treatment of 30,000,000 documents) and they may, perhaps, shake a conservative head over the ultra-modern methods which are to be used in connexion with some problems (leaves requiring repair, for instance, are to be laminated, under heat, between sheets of cellulose acetate foil, by a process which provides for the treatment of 100,000 per annum) ; but they will not fail to admire the courage with which American Archivists are attacking a vast task and the breadth of outlook with which the attack is planned, nor to wish them well in all their experiments. The Report, besides summarising departmental reports from the chiefs of sixteen Offices and Divisions within the National Archives, contains extremely valuable information concerning the general organisation of that Department as a whole : including such subjects as the *Powers and Functions of the Archivist* ; the constitution and work of the *National Archives Council* ; the method and scope of *Transfers* to the National Archives ; the disposal (that burning question) of *Useless Papers* ; the Membership and proposed work of the new *National Historical Publications Commission* ; and the *Federal Register* : and it prints in one of its Appendixes the *National Archives Act*, with other germane docu-

ments, and in another a report on the *Survey of Federal Archives*. We note that by the end of the fiscal year, 1936, fitted space for the accommodation of Archives had attained 192,000 cubic feet and that a further 488,000 cubic feet are to be equipped in 1937; representing 76 per cent of the present Repository Accommodation.

The other two publications we shall mention are the first two in a series of *Bulletins of the National Archives*. One gives in a dozen pages a useful popular account of the meaning, size and value of the National Archives of the United States; with the history of their adventures and of the long struggle which has ended in what is boldly, but no doubt quite correctly, described as "the finest and best equipped structure of its kind in the world." The second (published November, 1936,) is the brief account of a Conference of Archivists at Chattanooga in December, 1935. It is evident that the Archive Movement in America is not to perish for lack of enthusiasm or organised effort; and we may once more take occasion to wish it well.

SOME CONTINENTAL COUNTRIES

*Austria*¹¹

In Austria, as elsewhere during recent years, a major trend of *Archive Policy* has been towards an official control of Private Archives. In 1936, the supervision of Private Archives of public interest, especially those of a Feudal and Manorial nature, passed definitely into the control of the Central Archive Service. At the same time the Austrian Archive Service has not been blind to the problems presented by the class of Archives which stand midway between National Archives proper, and Private Muniments—the Archives of Local Administrative Bodies and the like. These also it has taken under its wing, and during the last year has been able to incite Town Authorities to have their Records put in order under expert supervision. From the internal point of view of the Archive Service,

¹¹ We are indebted to Dr. Gross of the *Haus- Hof- und Staats- Archiv* for the information used in this note.

the new *Dienstvorschrift* for the Upper-Austrian *Landesarchiv* at Linz is something of a landmark, in its systematic exposition of all that falls within the competence of a typical Archive Repository, and of all that may be expected of it.

Building Activity has been restricted in Austria this year to a small increase in accommodation achieved by the *Landesregierungsarchiv für Tirol* at Innsbrück. In the matter of the *Repairing* of Archives, Austria is to be congratulated on the zeal of those responsible for the reconditioning of the Records of the Ministries of the Interior and of Justice, so badly damaged when the Justizpalast was burned on 15th July, 1927.

Accessions to the Central Archives include Records from the Registries of the War-time *Wirtschaftszentral*, and the important collection of Papers left by *Ministerpräsident* Count Hohenwart. The Archives of the individual Provincial Capitals—Innsbrück, Salzburg, Linz, Graz, Klagenfurt, Bregenz—have, nearly all of them, accessions of greater or less importance to report. The Austrian Archives have noted an increase of historical and genealogical Searches during this year. The opening of the Vienna Central Archives up to 1st January, 1895, has had a particularly noteworthy effect in this respect, and especially in the number of foreigners who have taken advantage of these facilities; in the *Haus- Hof- und Staats- Archiv*, indeed, searchers of this category account for almost a third of the total number.

The most important *Publication* of the last year has been the first volume of the *Gesamtinventar des Wiener Haus- Hof- und Staats- Archivs*, in the series of Inventories of Austrian State Archives. Dr. Ludwig Bittner, the Director, is responsible for this work, which applies a critical method based on considerations of provenance to the Archives under review. Notes on the contents of the various Classes, and on their origin and composition, together with information about the actual arrangement of the Records, and the activities of their Custodians, should make this work one of the most complete Guides of its kind in existence. Two further volumes and an Index are to appear in the

course of this year and next. The present and late Directors of the *Wiener Hofkammerarchiv*, Franz Wilhelm and Josef Kallbrunner, have brought their "*Quellen zur deutschen Siedlungsgeschichte in Sudosteuroopa*" based on the lists of emigrants in that collection, and published in *Schriften der deutschen Akademie*, to a close with the Index of Names. Other publications include: "*Das Banater Schulwesen im 18. Jahrhundert*" (*Veröffentlichungen des Wiener Hofkammerarchivs*) by Hans Wolf. "*Österreich-Ungarns letzter Krieg, 1914-1918*," Bd. 6., (*Kriegsarchiv*), under the direction of E. Glaise von Horstenau; "*Urkundenbuch des Landes ob der Enns*," Bd. 10, No. 3 (*Oberösterreichischen Landesarchiv, Linz*), by E. Trinks.

Belgium¹²

The provision of a new *Exhibition Hall*, with direct access from the Repository, has made it possible for the *Archives Générales du Royaume* to set up a permanent Museum of documents of an intrinsically interesting, or representative nature.

Transfers to the Central Archives during the last year have included documents from the Ministry of Public Instruction (1831-1900), 17th and 18th Century Family Papers, and Economic Archives of the present Century; in addition, the Buhl Committee, set up, after the War, by an American benefactor for the relief of those in need, has now, at the close of its activities, presented its Records to the State. The most important *Publication* of the year has been the *Inventaire des Archives de la Ville de Bruxelles, II: Terriers-rentiers*, by M. Ch. Pergameni, Archivist of the Town of Brussels, in "*Archives, Bibliothèques et Musées de Belgique* (1937, No. 1)."

Denmark¹³

It should not be too late to note a development of some

¹² Once again we are indebted to Mademoiselle E. Lejour of the *Archives Générales du Royaume* for the information comprised in this note.

¹³ We are indebted once again to Dr. Astrid Friis for the information comprised in this note.

importance which occurred actually in 1935, but which was not noticed in our Danish *chronique* for last year; that was the *Transfer* from the *Rigsarkiv* to the *Søkvæsthus*, an old house in the Christianshavn suburb of Copenhagen, specially conditioned as a repository for the purpose, of Customs Accounts and like documents, dating from 1660 onwards. It was, of course, lack of space in the *Rigsarkiv* which rendered this step necessary, but the Records can still be produced in the Search Room there, if so required. Two transfers of some importance have occurred lately. First, the Archives of the Registry of Lands have been transferred from the Board of Agriculture to the *Rigsarkiv*; these Records comprise an important Register for the whole of Denmark, compiled between the years 1681 and 1685, and utilised for fiscal purposes from 1688 till 1840. Secondly, in April, 1937, the ancient Archives of the University were transferred from the University Library to the *Rigsarkiv*.

Among the *Publications* of the past year, two are worthy of special mention. The first is a new volume of *Kancelliets Brevbøger* (Letterbooks of the Chancery, Domestic), edited by E. Marquard, covering the period 1633-1634: secondly, *Den Danske Centraladministration, 1914-1935*, compiled by Harald Jørgensen, gives an account not only of all the Government Offices, but of all the Extraordinary Commissions set up during the Great War, together with a list of all Government Officials at work during that period.

It remains to note that the transfer of Records between the *Rigsarkiv* and the Kiel *Staatsarchiv für Schleswig-Holstein*, described in our last year's note, has been the subject of recent articles by Rigsarkiver A. Linvald (*Dansk historisk Tidsskrift*, 10 Række IV), and by Arkiver Dr. H. Hjelholt (*Fortid og Nutid*, XII).

France¹⁴

The Presidential *décret* of 28th December, 1936, by which the title of *Directeur des Archives de France* was conferred

¹⁴ Once again we are indebted to M. Henri Courteault, now Honorary Director of the Archives of France, for the information comprised in this note.

on the head of the French Archive Service, has provided the important official who directs not only the *Archives Nationales* proper, but those of the local administrative bodies, with a designation which really corresponds to the extent and importance of his responsibilities. It is pleasing to know that a similar *décret* has honoured M. Henri Courtault, as from his retirement from that post on April 1st, 1937, with the title of *Directeur Honoraire*; he has been succeeded by M. Pierre Caron of the *Archives Nationales*, whose authority, both in matters of bibliography and as a specialist in the history of the French Revolution, is not alone in qualifying him eminently to succeed his distinguished predecessor. The *projet de loi* on public papers, and their protection, has been laid by the Government on the *bureau* of the *Chambre des Députés*, and will probably be debated in the course of the next session.

Constructional work on the *Hôtel de Rohan*, which adjoins the *Hôtel de Soubise*, the home of the *Archives Nationales* since 1808, has been continued, and the restoration of the apartments of the Cardinals de Rohan, on the first floor, will be finished in the course of the present year. The gardens "*à la française*" which once linked the two hotels are now restored, and there is every reason to hope that in two or three years' time the magnificent ensemble presented by these two ancient princely dwellings will be entirely completed.

The *Minutier Central des Notaires de Paris* has received three new "*études*," and thirteen others await deposit; this brings the number of *minutiers* deposited up to 88. Important transfers to the *Archives Nationales* from the Ministries of the Merchant Marine, Public Works and Agriculture are in progress, in accordance with the *décret* of 21st July, 1936. The *Conseil d'Etat* has also decided to transfer some part of its records; these, however, go back no further than 1871, when its then existing records were burned during the Commune. The *Compagnie Générale Transatlantique* is similarly to deposit a part of its records at the *Archives Nationales*.

In the matter of *Local Repositories*, it is satisfactory to be able to note that two of the posts of Departmental Archivist, out of the five suppressed from motives of economy in 1934, are in the process of re-establishment. The *Archives du Nord* at Lille, the second most considerable collection in France, is to be entirely reconstructed, while a new post of Archivist to the *Gouvernement Général en l'Afrique Occidentale Française* has been established at Dakar.

Under the head of *Publications* we note that the *Etat Général des Inventaires des Archives Nationales, Départementales, Communales et Hospitalières* is now printed; the introduction is being finished and the volume will appear in the summer of the present year. To the series of *Repertoires Critiques des Anciens Inventaires d'Archives*, the interesting Repertory of the Judicial Series in the *Archives Nationales* (Series V-ZZ; *Parlement, Châtelet, Cour des Aides, les Monnaies, etc.*) is shortly to be added: this collection contains already three other fascicles for Paris, and six for various *Départements* (Côte d'Or, Doubs, Moselle, Orne, Seine-et-Oise, and Vosges). The *Archives des Bouches-du-Rhône* at Marseilles has just published an interesting historical account of the formation of their older "fonds." Finally, the *Chronique des Archives Départementales* for 1934-1935 has appeared, and that for 1936-1937 is in preparation.

*Germany*¹⁵

Considerable changes in German Archive Organisation have occurred in the course of the last year. As from the first of October, 1936, the Military Archives have been separated from the *Reichsarchiv*, and now form a *Heeresarchiv* under the Ministry of War—*Oberkommando des Heeres*. The branches of the *Reichsarchiv* at Dresden and Stuttgart have similarly been turned into military collections. The Naval and Air Arms have their own Archives. The present *Reichsarchiv* has been reorganised as a central

¹⁵ We are indebted to Dr. Fürst, to Dr. Meisner of the *Reichsarchiv*, to Dr. Winter of the Prussian Archive Service, and to Dr. Baier of Karlsruhe for information used in this note.

Record Office for the history of Germany since 1867, and of the movement for the unification of Germany from 1848 onwards. It now falls into four main departments :

- A. *Staatsoberhaupt und Parlamente.*
- B. *Reichsregierung und Reichsministerium.*
- C. *Kriegsgesellschaften.*
- D. Bequests and historical collections.

A further department at Frankfurt a/M. comprises Administrative Records, etc., before 1867. The division B. above comprises the following groups : the *Reichskanzler* and central administration of the Reich, Interior, Foreign Affairs, Transport, Posts, Justice, Finance, Colonies, Food, Economics, Labour, Demobilisation, Treasury Reconstruction, Occupied Territories, Propaganda, Air, Education, Ecclesiastical Affairs. The *Reichsarchiv* is no longer responsible for the records of local administrative bodies depending on the central (*Reich*) administration ; these now fall within the competence of the various provincial Archives.

The *Reichsarchiv* and the Potsdam *Heeresarchiv* are temporarily housed in the same building, but the *Reichsarchiv* is ultimately to be united administratively, and from the point of view of repository accommodation, with the Prussian *Geheimes Staatsarchiv* at Berlin-Dahlem.

These new arrangements have resulted in considerable transfers to the *Reichsarchiv* of records from the Ministries mentioned above. The *Reichsarchiv* is also receiving the complete texts of Statutes, Regulations and similar documents after their proclamation. In order to secure a uniform treatment for German and foreign searchers who wish to make use of Diplomatic documents of a date later than 1867, it has been decided that requests for permission to use such documents shall be referred to the Foreign Office.

Two problems of considerable magnitude are facing the Prussian Archive Service at the present time. One is the *Problem of Space*—transfers from Administrative Departments have been increasing, and in the nature of things may be expected to increase further in the future. There are,

of course, two directions in which it is possible to modify such a situation. One is by enlarging the available repository accommodation; thus a new building has been erected at Marburg, and is to be followed by the erection of new Record Accommodation for the *Geheimes Staatsarchiv* at Berlin-Dahlem; new buildings are also planned for next year at Hanover, Kiel and Koblenz; Münster has secured an extension of repository accommodation; and similar extensions on a large scale have been projected at Breslau, Düsseldorf, Stettin, Magdeburg and Aurich¹⁶. Meanwhile every Repository has been obliged to hire neighbouring buildings and adapt them for the accommodation of Records. The other line along which the problem may be attacked is of a purely administrative nature, and consists in the provision of regulations for transferring departments, for the weeding out of superfluous classes, and so on. The Prussian Archive Service is, however, forced to admit the impossibility of finding satisfactory criteria to decide whether or not a Record class is worthy of permanent preservation—a fact which coming at this stage in the development of Archive science is worthy of special attention.

The second problem with which the Prussian Archivist is faced, lies in the sudden and overwhelming *Increase in the number of Searchers*, official and private. This increase is not entirely accounted for by genealogical searches; research into local history is also developing to a noticeable extent. The Prussian statistics (which are endorsed by a similar report from Karlsruhe) are certainly remarkable, and the result has been that, notwithstanding a 15 per cent increase of staff, the work of cataloguing, arranging, and so on, has had to be dangerously slackened in order to deal with the pressure on the Search Departments. It will be observed that this must necessarily react on the other problem of dealing with the increase in transfers. The suggested solution is the recruitment of a special class of Archivists to deal only with searches and searchers.

¹⁶ Other German Repositories that have extended their accommodation include Oldenburg, Bremen and Rudolstadt.

The problem of the protection of *Private Archives* continues to be met by the appointment of Honorary Archive Wardens to deal with various classes of such records. Thus in the Province of Silesia, there are 86 such wardens to deal with Secular Records, 50 to deal with Roman Catholic Ecclesiastical Records, and 55 to deal with those of the Lutherans.

Noteworthy *Publications* include: *Übersicht über die Bestände des Brandenburg-Preussischen Hausarchivs zu Berlin-Charlottenburg (Mitteilungen der Preussischen Archivverwaltung, Heft 27, Leipzig: Hirzel 1936)*. Ed. Dehio, Hölk, Tagow.

Das Preussische Heer vom Tilsiter Frieden bis zum Ausbruch der Befreiungskriege 1807-1813, Band 1:—1807-1809 (Publikationen aus den Preussischen Staatsarchiven, Band 94, Leipzig: Hirzel, 1937). Ed. Rudolph Vaupel.

*Hungary*¹⁷

No extension of accommodation has been achieved at the Hungarian Archives at Budapest this year. The *Lack of Space* there is keenly felt, part of the building being still used by the Central Military Archives, which have not yet found a separate repository. For this reason it has not been possible to take over more than a certain proportion of the Governmental Records which, under the new regulations, should be transferred when they become more than 32 years old.

Progress has been made in the policy of the Hungarian Archives in encouraging owners of *Family and other private Muniments* to entrust them to the Central Repository, usually as a permanent deposit, with a reservation of owners' rights. The appeal has met with a favourable reception, accessions of this type last year numbering nineteen deposits, and six purchases by the Hungarian Archives themselves. Besides these, thirteen previous

¹⁷ We are again indebted to Dr. Denis Jánosy, of the *Magyar Királyi Országos Levéltár* for the information used in this note.

depositors supplemented their existing deposits. These figures may seem small, but in fact they represent a considerable number of Archives of this sort, as available under present conditions; for it must be remembered that the third of historic Hungary which lies within the present national boundaries was precisely the third which suffered most from Turkish invasion in the 16th and 17th Centuries; and the greater part of the Hungarian Private Archives which escaped these devastations lie, across the frontiers, in Czechoslovakia and Rumania.

The *Quarterly Review* "*Leveletári Közlemények*", published by the Hungarian Archives, has changed its form during the last year: it now consists entirely of professional articles, and no longer includes historical papers based on material in the National Archives, as heretofore.

*Italy*¹⁸

The projected *Building Developments* in a large number of Italian *Archivi di Stato*, as described in our note for last year, are now in the course of realisation. In addition to the Repositories mentioned last year, a palazzo is to be provided for the *Archivio Provinciale di Stato* of Potenza, in accordance with a recent decision of the local Provincial Administration. The most important work now in hand is the reconstruction of the *R. Archivio di Stato* at Naples, begun in 1931. About 3,000,000 lire are to be spent on improvements which include the provision of 9,000 metres of metal racking, and the construction of a large new hall for Private Archives. The *Archivio di Stato* of Palermo has similarly been modernised by the installation of 3,500 metres of metal racking.

Commissions of Archivists, under the direction of the Superintendents and Directors of the various *Archivi di Stato*, have been at work, during the last year, on the

¹⁸ We are again indebted to Professor Count Riccardo Filangieri di Candida, of the *Reale Archivio di Stato* at Naples, for the information comprised in this note.

problem of the elimination of superfluous Records already transferred to the various Repositories from the judicial and administrative bodies from which they emanate. The *Consiglio per gli Archivi* has been studying a project for the reform of the *Regolamento* of 1911. Under the auspices of the Ministry of the Interior, there is in progress a census of the Codes of Statutes of the various Communes and Trade Guilds existing in Italy.

Publications during the past year have included the first volume of a general guide to the *Archivio di Stato* of Venice, in the series *Annales Institutorum* (ed. Count Andrea Da Mosto): and the *Archivio di Stato* of Turin is publishing the correspondence of Count Cavour, under the editorship of S. E. Alessandro Luzio, and the Superintendent, Count Gian Carlo Buraggi. The thirteenth volume of the 'Libri della "Biccherna,"' in the course of publication by the *Archivio di Stato* of Siena, appeared during last year. The *Istituto Storico Italiano per il Medioevo* has undertaken the publication of the 'Registri perduti della Cancelleria Angioina del l'Archivio di Stato di Napoli,' and has entrusted the work to the Superintendent of those archives, Professor Count Riccardo Filangieri.

Other publications include 'Regesti Lucchesi,' ed. Dr. Lazzareschi, Director of the Archives of Lucca (Ministry of the Interior); 'L'Archivio Silvestri di Calcio,' Vol. IV, ed. Dr. Giuseppe Bonelli (*Archivio di Stato*, Milan); and 'Atti e diplome di Nona,' ed. Giuseppe Praga, in the *Archivio storico per la Delmazia* (*Archivio di Stato*, Zara).

*Poland*¹⁹

The Polish State Archive Administration has been compelled, through *Lack of Space* and the generally unsuitable condition of the repository accommodation for the Modern Archives at Warsaw, to install these Records in hired premises.

There is at present under examination at the Ministry of Religious Denominations and Public Instruction, a

¹⁹ Once again we are indebted to Professor Siemienski, of the *Archivum Glowne Akt Dawnych*, for the information used in this note.

project of the Director of the Central Archives to separate from the general body of Civil Servants a special category for those whose functions are of what may roughly be called a "scientific" nature; this class would include *Librarians, Archivists and Museum Officials*.

Among *Publications* of importance, first place may perhaps be given to the fourth volume of M. Charles Badecki's inventory of the Archives of the town of Lwów, the appearance of the third volume of which was referred to in our note of last year. The present volume, which deals with financial records, is entitled: *Archiwum Akt Dawnych miasta Lwowa. A. Oddział staropolski. IV. Księgi rachunkowe (Lonherskie), 1404-1788*. M. Kaczmarczyk, Director of the State Archives of Poznań, has edited the *Liber Scabinorum veteris civitatis Toruniensis, 1363-1428 (Societas Literaria Toruniensis. Fontes t. XXIX, Toruń, 1936, pp. ix + 516)*—the oldest register of one of the larger towns. A similar document, but this time the single register of a small town, has been published by Mme. Polackówna, of the State Archives at Lwów; this is entitled *Księga radziecka miasta Drohobycza, 1542-1563. Registrum actionum coram consilibus civitatis Drohobycz existentium (Société des Sciences et des Lettres de Lwów; Série: Zabytki dziejowe, t. IV. fasc. I: Lwów, 1936: pp. o + 2 tables + 156)*. The 14th volume of the review *Archeion*, was published during the course of the year.

M. Siemiński's account of the work in progress on the *Ancient Inventories* (that of Kromer and its successors) of the Polish Archives of the Crown²⁰, in the Bulletin of the Académie Polonaise des Sciences et des Lettres (Cracow, 1936) is a testimony not only to the riches of the Polish Archives in this particular respect, but also to the technical skill with which Polish Archivists are handling the special problems which have resulted from the vicissitudes of their Country's history.

²⁰ The "Crown" of Poland signified the ancient Kingdom of Poland, which in union with the Grand Duchy of Lithuania made up the "Republic" of Poland.

*Sweden*²¹

The problem of providing a *New Repository* for the *Riksarkiv* continues to exercise the Swedish Archive Service. A good understanding, however, has now been reached with the Office of Works (*Byggnadsstyrelsen*), which proposed, in February 1936, that a new building should be erected on a site with possibilities of future expansion, and that the present Repository should be used for some other public purpose. It was suggested that an architectural competition should be organised, in close collaboration with the Archive Service: discussions with Government Representatives and those of the Stockholm Municipal Authorities resulted, however, in an instruction to the Office of Works to find a site more central than that proposed. The Office of Works reported, in October, that a site more central than the one previously under consideration could only be found if the whole question was postponed to the distant future: and since the *Riksarkiv's* need for expansion was pressing and immediate, such postponement could hardly be recommended.

Muniment rooms have been included in the new building for the Swedish Chancery (which includes Swedish Government Offices generally): a scheme produced by the *Riksarkiv*, detailing the position and functions of the official who will have charge of these Records, has met, however, with little support; and is not mentioned in the proposals laid by the Government before the *Riksdag*. The new *Landsarkiv* at Härnösand is now complete, and has been open to the public since December 1st: the provincial authorities of Västernorrland and Västerbotten have been ordered to transfer their Records to the New Repository.

In our last year's note, we mentioned that the Deputies of the National Debt Office (*Riksgäldsfullmäktige*) had been ordered to prepare the publication of unprinted Parliamentary documents. On the recommendation of the *Riksarkiv*, the editing of the Minute Books of the Clerical Estate of the

²¹ Once again we are indebted to Dr. C. F. Palmstierna of the *Riksarkiv* for the substance of our Swedish note.

Riksdag from 1642-1660 has been entrusted to Arkivråd Dr. A. Forssell, and that of the minute books of the Estate of Peasants from 1720-1727 to Förste Amanuens S. Landahl.

Arkivråd J. A. Almquist has continued his work on 'The Frank Tenements (*frälsegods*) of Sweden during her period as a Great Power,'; and is at work at present on the third volume, comprising the province of Östergötland: preparatory work on the remaining provinces has produced lists and figures of the earlier tenants, and of the so-called alienations of crown lands.

The first issue has appeared of 'Acta Cameralia,' under the editorship of L. M. Bååth: it is entitled 'Diplomatarium Svecanum. App. Acta Pontificum Svecica. I. Acta Cameralia. Vol. I. Fasc. I. Ann. MLXII-MCCCXLVIII,' and consists of 401 pages: the second part, which will complete the volume, is in proof.

CONCLUSION

In bringing this year's survey to a close the compilers would once more call attention to the way in which (even in an abridged form and covering a shorter period than usual) it is able to chronicle new developments, both at home and abroad, which are of more than passing interest. In particular the extent to which Archive problems, and the means adopted for their solution, transcend national boundaries is, we think, strikingly illustrated.

library services⁷. A note on the new library of the Middlesex Hospital is given in the *L.A.R.* 38, 1936, p. 201, and C. E. A. Bedwell has written an interesting general account in "Hospital libraries"⁸. The Guild of Hospital Librarians which was formed in 1934 has published a quarterly journal *The Book Trolley* since its first annual meeting in London in April, 1935. The second meeting, organized on an international basis, was held in Paris in May, 1936, and the brief report in the *L.A.R.*⁹ shows the great value and extent of the work being done. The next conference will be in Copenhagen in 1938.

Libraries for the Blind. A note on the remarkable development of the British National Library for the Blind has been given¹⁰ and there are two articles in Danish on the subject. The first "Det første offentlige Blindbibliotek"¹¹ describes the library for the blind at Maribo and the second is a general article by Ida Bachmann entitled "Blindbiblioteker"¹².

Prison libraries. "Walls have mouths" by Wilfred F. R. Macartney¹³ is written by a man with a grievance, but if this is remembered, much can be gained from the comments made in Chapters 9 and 10 (pp. 194-233) from the supremely important point of view of the convict's on prison libraries and reading in prisons.

Photography. The various uses of micro-photography in libraries have been described by M. L. Raney in several articles, in "Micro-photography in the service of science,"¹⁴ in "Microphotography for smaller libraries,"¹⁵ in "Reading miniature photo-copy"¹⁶ and finally in the volume edited by Mr. Raney for the *A.L.A.* entitled "Micro-photography for libraries"¹⁷. This book discusses the filming of union

⁷ How to run a hospital library. 1936. (British Red Cross Society. 3d.)

⁸ Contemporary Review, 150, 1936, pp. 224-28.

⁹ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 252-53.

¹⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 199, 201.

¹¹ Bogens Verden, 18, 1936, pp. 229-30.

¹² *Ibid.*, pp. 302-12.

¹³ 440 pp., Gollancz, 1936, 10s. 6d.

¹⁴ *Bull. Med. L.A.*, 25, 1936, pp. 81-88.

¹⁵ *W.B.*, xi, 1936-37, pp. 246-47.

¹⁶ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 136-38.

¹⁷ xi, 138 pp., *A.L.A.*, 1936, \$2.50.

catalogues, of rare books and of newspapers ; the film publications of books direct from manuscript, and the details of the cameras, reading devices and films themselves. C. Björkbom gives a general survey in "Biblioteken och Småbildsfotograferingen,"¹⁸ V. E. Pratt another in "The micro-copy film situation"¹⁹ and C. E. Rush a short note on the work being done in Europe in "Micro-photography abroad"²⁰.

With regard to the use of artificial light in reading damaged MSS. and similar matter, R. B. Haselden, the well-known expert, shows, with illustrations, in "The use of polarized light for the examination of manuscripts and printed books"²¹ that more can be seen under a microscope with polarized light than is reproduced in a micro-photograph taken in ordinary light. N. F. Beardsley's article "The photography of altered and faded manuscripts"²² discusses the use of ultra-violet light and is well illustrated. In "The ultra-violet lamp in the library"²³ Dr. Julius Grant describes the apparatus, its use, and its effects on different papers and inks.

Wireless. A note on the use of wireless for library propaganda is given in *W.B.*, 10, 1935-36, p. 683, and there is an important speech in Dutch on "Wireless and Libraries" by Dr. P. H. Ritter, Jr.²⁴ Dr. Ritter described wireless talks from the broadcasting official's point of view. He emphasized the fact that broadcasters and librarians should try to get the public to take a pride in the possession of books. He described radio-libraries and especially the gramophone library of the Dutch broadcasting corporation, expressing the view that the gramophone record may become so important that the "spoken book" will largely supplant the written book.

¹⁸ Bogens Verden, 18, 1936, pp. 295-302.

¹⁹ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 260-63.

²⁰ *Ibid.*, pp. 948-49.

²¹ *L.J.*, 61, 1936, pp. 906-07.

²² *Ibid.*, pp. 96-99.

²³ *Librarian and Book World*, 25, 1936, pp. 150-51.

²⁴ *BiLev.*, 21, 1936, pp. 32-35.

Cinema. The relation of libraries and the cinema is discussed by M. C. Pottinger in "The literature of the film"²⁵ in which he gives a well annotated list of some 20 modern books in English on the cinema. His article is followed by a brief note on the growth and extensive use of the Empire Film Library.

Music. In "Orchestral centres at Public Libraries"²⁶ W. E. Dommett describes the successful formation of such a centre at the Surbiton Public Library.

²⁵ *L.A.R.*, 38, 1936, pp. 228-37.

²⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 154.

INDEX

The index is selective. It is of subjects and places; not of authors. Libraries are entered under the names of their towns, and, where necessary, also under their titles.

- Aberystwyth, National Library of Wales, 238
 Agriculture, special libraries, 27-28
 American Association of Law Libraries, 92
 American Library Association, 74, 90, 114, 158, 202-03
 Board of Education for Librarianship, 90-92.
 Catalog Section, 128
 College Library Advisory Board, 22
 Library Extension Board, 65
 Richmond (Va.) Conference, 41, 50
 Amsterdam, University Library, 19
 Anglo-American Catalogue Code, 5, 125-26
 Ankara, Agricultural and Veterinary College, 28
 Annapolis, Hall of Records, 103
 Antwerp, Stadtsbibliotheek, 103
 Architecture, library, *see* Library buildings
 Archives, 216-53
 cataloguing of, 231-33
 photography of, 231
 repairs to, 230-31
 storage of, 227-28
 in Austria, 240-42
 ,, Belgium, 242
 ,, Denmark, 242-43
 ,, France, 243-45
 ,, Germany, 245-48
 ,, Great Britain and Ireland, 218-39
 ,, Hungary, 248-49
 ,, Italy, 249-50
 ,, Poland, 250-51
 ,, Sweden, 252-53
 ,, U.S.A., 239-40
 See also Palaeography and Manuscripts
 Art, special libraries, 28
 As, Veterinary and Agricultural College Library, 27
 Association of Special Libraries and Information Bureaux, 38, 78, 119
 Australia, 36-37, 95, 142, 190
 Austria, 5, 12, 87, 104, 195-96, 240-42
 Banking and Finance, special libraries, 28-29
 Barcelona, University Library, 21
 Bavaria, State Library, 1, 16
 Beatty, Mr. Chester. Collection of MSS., 204-05
 Belgium, 12-13, 46, 85, 163, 185-86, 242
 Bellevue School of Nursing Library, New York, 37-38
 Bengal Library Association, 45-46, 96
 Berlin, Staatsbibliothek, 15-16
 University Library, 2, 15-16
 Berne, Bibliothèque pour Tous, 63
 National Library, 2
 Bibliographical Society, 184-85
 Bibliography, 5-6, 145, 166-203, 254
 in Australia, 190
 ,, Austria, 196
 ,, Belgium, 185-86
 ,, Czecho-Slovakia, 191, 196
 ,, Denmark, 196
 ,, Esthonia, 190
 ,, Finland, 196
 ,, France, 178-80, 196-97
 ,, Germany, 180-83, 197
 ,, Great Britain and Ireland, 168-75, 198
 ,, Greece, 198
 ,, Holland, 186
 ,, Hungary, 191, 195
 ,, Iceland, 186
 ,, Italy, 183-85
 ,, Latvia, 198-99
 ,, Lithuania, 191, 199

- Bibliography (*contd.*)
 in New Zealand, 190
 „ Norway, 187, 199-200
 „ Poland, 200
 „ Rumania, 200
 „ Russia, 200-01
 „ Spain, 188-89
 „ Sweden, 187-88, 201
 „ Switzerland, 189-90, 201
 „ Ukraine, 202
 „ U.S.A., 175-78, 202-03
 „ Yugoslavia 203
 Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris, 14
 Blind, libraries for the, 255
 Board of Education (Great Britain),
 4, 66, 142
 Bodleian Library, Oxford, 1-2,
 17-18, 104-06
 Bookbinding, 153-65
 Book production :
 Bookbinding, 153-65
 Printing and illustration, 144-52
 Book selection, 118-19
 Boone Library School (China), 99
 Bordeaux, Public Library, 47
 University Library, 14
 Botany, special libraries, 29
 Bratislava, University Library, 13
 Breslau, State and University
 Library, 17
 Bristol, Westbury-on-Trym Branch
 Library, 113
 British Columbia, 64
 British Leather Manufacturers' Re-
 search Association, 5, 154
 British Museum, London, 17, 19,
 137-38, 204, 221-23, 225
 Cataloguing rules, 125-26
 British Records Association, 218-20
 British Red Cross Society, 254-55
 Brno, University Library, 13
 Broadcasting and libraries, 255
 Brotherton Library, Leeds, *see*
 Leeds, University Library
 Budapest, Pázmány Péter Univer-
 sity Library, 19
 Bulletins (library), 151-52
 for children, 73
 Business, special libraries, 28-30,
 38-39
 Byzantine art, 207
 California, University Library of
 Southern, 109
 Cambridge, Imperial Bureau of
 Plant Genetics, 29
 University Library, 18, 101
 Campion Hall Library, Oxford, 106
 Canada, 64-65, 101
 Carnegie Corporation (U.S.A.), 63-
 64, 125
 Carnegie United Kingdom Trust,
 3-4, 54, 66, 81, 110, 142
 Catalogues and cataloguing, 5, 78,
 125-30
 archives, 231-33
 Union Catalogues :
 in Belgium, 46
 „ China, 35
 „ Germany, 5, 86, 129
 „ Great Britain and Ireland,
 78-84, 129-30
 „ Holland, 86
 „ Norway, 87
 „ Sweden, 25
 „ U.S.A., 5, 89, 129-30
 Charlottesville, University of Vir-
 ginia Library, 23
 Chicago, Public Library, 3
 Children's Libraries, 4, 72-76
 China, 34-35, 51-52, 87, 98-99, 129
 China, Library Association, 52, 98
 Christchurch (N.Z.). Canterbury
 University Library, 20
 Cinematography and libraries, 12,
 257
 Classification, 131-34
 Cleveland, Public Library, 29
 Cloth, for binding, 154-55
 Codex Sinaiticus, binding, 153
 Columbia School of Library Service,
 New York, 4, 93-94
 Commercial libraries, 29-30, 38-39
 Congress. IVe. Congress voor
 Boek- en Bibliotheekwezen,
 127-28
 Co-operation, 4, 77-89
 in Austria, 12, 87
 „ Belgium, 85
 „ China, 35, 87
 „ Denmark, 85
 „ Finland, 85
 „ France, 12, 85-86
 „ Germany, 4-5, 86
 „ Great Britain and Ireland,
 2, 77-84, 118
 „ Holland, 19, 48, 86
 „ India, 84
 „ Ireland, 84
 „ New Zealand, 84
 „ Norway, 87
 „ Poland, 21
 „ South Africa, 85
 „ U.S.A., 87-88, 118

- Copenhagen, Botanisk Haves Bibliotek, 29
 Library of the Navy, 37
 Royal Library, 130
 University Library, 13
 Veterinary and Agricultural College Library, 27
 Cornwall (New York), Public Library, 113-14
 Coulsdon, Public Library, 111
 County and rural libraries, 53-65
 in Canada, 64-65
 „ Czecho-Slovakia, 57
 „ Denmark, 57
 „ Germany, 57-60
 „ Great Britain and Ireland, 53
 „ India, 60-61
 „ Norway, 61
 „ Spain, 62
 „ Sweden, 62
 „ Switzerland, 62-63
 „ U.S.A., 63-65
 Czech Academy of Sciences and Arts, 13
 Czecho-Slovakia, 2, 13, 57, 191, 196
 Debrecen, University Library, 19
 Defence, special libraries, 36-37
 Denison University Library, Granville, 23
 Denmark, 1, 4, 13, 27, 29, 37, 47, 57, 85, 101, 130, 196, 242-43
 Dentistry, special libraries, 31
 Derby Education Committee, 54
 Deutscher Gesamtkatalog, 4-5, 86, 129
 Devonshire Hill Branch Library, Tottenham, 111-12
 Dissertations, German, 17
 Documentation, 13, 25, 27
 Drama, special libraries, 32
 Dresden, Technische Hochschule, 25
 Dublin, Public Record Office, 235-36
 Durham, University Library, 1, 18
 Edinburgh Bibliographical Society, 174
 Edinburgh, National Library of Scotland, 1, 19, 102
 Education for librarianship. *See* Professional education
 Estonia, 4, 13-14, 190
 Esthonia Bibliographical Institute, Tallin, 4
 Europe, Survey of libraries in Central, 46
 Extension work and libraries, 123-24, 137
 Feminism, special libraries, 32
 Fifehire County Library, 54
 Films, for library publicity, 12
 See also Cinematography and Photography
 Finance, Library. *See* Library finance
 Finance, special libraries, 28-29
 Finland, 2, 14, 47, 76, 85, 114, 196
 Fisk University Library, 23
 Flexwood, for binding, 155
 Florence, National Central Library, 183-84
 Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington, 32
 France, 8, 14, 47-48, 85-86, 160, 164-65, 178-80, 196-97, 211-12, 243-45
 Frankfurt am Main, University Library, 16-17
 Frederiksberg (Copenhagen), Public Library, 1, 47, 101
 Frick Fine Art Reference Library, New York, 1, 28
 Genoa, University Library, 1, 20
 Geography, special libraries, 32-33
 Germany, 1-5, 8, 15-17, 36, 57-60, 76, 86, 96-97, 129, 161, 197, 213, 245-48
 Gloucestershire County Library, 54
 Göttingen, University Library, 2, 15
 Granville, Denison University Library, 23
 Great Britain and Ireland, 1-5, 8, 17-19, 29, 32, 38-39, 53-57, 66-69, 72-74, 77-84, 94-95, 100, 102, 104-09, 111-13, 115, 118, 121, 124-28, 130-40, 142-48, 153, 157, 168-75, 198, 204-10, 214, 218-38, 254-55
 Greece, 148
 Greek MSS., 206
 Guild of Hospital Librarians, 255
 Hague (the), Public Library, 1, 48
 Härnösand, Archive store, 104
 Haslev-Seeland, Public Library, 47
 Helsingfors, University Library, 14
 Hendon, Public Library, 113
 Henley (Kent), Public Library, 111
 Herefordshire County Library, 53-54
 Historical Manuscripts Commission, 223-24

- History, special libraries, 32-33
 Holland, 19, 37, 48-49, 75, 86, 186, 256
 Holland, Public Library Association, 19, 48, 86.
 Hospital libraries, 254-55
 Hungary, 19, 32, 191, 198, 248-49
 Iceland, 186, 215
 Illustration, book, 148-50
 Incunabula, 183-84, 195
 India, 29-30, 60-61, 84, 96
 Indian Library Association, 84
 Industrial Research Bureau (India), 29-30
 Institute of Historical Research, London, 224-26
 International Archief voor de Vrouwenbeweging, Amsterdam, 32
 International Committee of Agricultural Librarians, 27
 International co-operation, 12-13, 88-89
 See also Co-operation
 International Federation of Library Associations, 6-7, 25-26, 88-89
 International Institute of Agriculture Library, Rome, 27
 Ireland, 45, 54-57, 84, 116, 140, 235-37
 Ireland, Library Association, 45, 84
 Irish Manuscripts Commission, 236
 Italy, 1, 20, 32, 36, 38, 110, 164, 183-85, 210-11, 249-50
 Italy, Chamber of Deputies, Publications and Library, 20, 38
 Japan, 1, 20, 30
 Jena, University Library, 17
 Yugoslavia, 20, 203
 Kyoto, University Library, 1, 20
 Language, special library, 37
 Latvia, 20, 198-99
 Law, library. *See* Library law
 Leather, for bookbinding, 153
 Leeds, University Library, 1, 18, 107
 Leipzig. Bibliothek des Institutes für Geschichte der Medizin, 36
 Einkaufshaus für Büchereien, 57-58
 Library Association (British), 4, 38, 74, 94, 116-17, 139
 County Libraries' Section, 53
 Home Counties Branch, Conference, Worthing, 55
 Margate Conference, 41-42, 44, 95, 115-17, 157
 School Libraries Section, 69
 Library Binding Institute (U.S.A.), 158
 Library buildings, 1-2, 13, 18-20, 23, 28, 46-48, 54-55, 67-68, 100-15
 National, 102-03
 Public, 101, 103-04, 111-14
 School, 110-11
 University, 100, 101, 104-10
 Library finance, 2, 14-15, 20, 27, 42, 46-48, 53, 60-63, 80, 136, 138
 Library law, 135-43
 in Australia, 142
 ,, Czecho-Slovakia, 2, 13
 ,, Denmark, 47
 ,, Great Britain and Ireland, 135-140, 142-43
 ,, India, 143
 ,, Norway, 61
 ,, U.S.A., 140-42
 Library literature, 5-12, 24, 35, 37-39, 42-43, 50-51, 66, 69, 74, 118-19, 139-42, 192-93, 254
 Library practice :
 Cataloguing, 125-30
 Classification, 131-34
 Organization and routine, 112-46
 Literature, library. *See* Library literature
 Literature, special libraries, 37
 Lithuania, 191, 199
 Liverpool, University Library, 1, 18, 100, 107-08
 Ljubljana, University Library, 1, 20
 London, British Museum, 17, 19, 137-38, 204, 221-23, 225
 Cataloguing rules, 126-27
 Institute of Historical Research, 224-26
 National Central Library, 2, 78-80
 Public Record Office, 220-21
 Royal Empire Society Library, 1, 32-33, 108-09
 Royal Institute of British Architects' Library, 101
 University Library, 18
 University School of Librarianship, 94
 Louisiana, Library School, 93
 Lyons, University Library, 14
 Madras Library Association, 60
 Madrid, National Library, 21
 University Library, 12
 Manchester, Public Library, 44, 101
 Manorial Records Committee, 223

- Manuscripts. *See* Palaeography and Manuscripts and Archives
- Maps, cataloguing of, 127-28
- Medical Library Association (U.S.A.), 33-34, 88
- Medicine, special libraries, 33-36
- Medieval Latin Dictionary, 224
- Melbourne, Department of Defence, Library, 36-37
- Melrose, Chronicle of, 208-10
- Metropolitan Vickers Electrical Co., Library, 40
- Military Science, special libraries, 36-37
- Milwaukee, Milwaukee-Downer College Library, 23
- Minnesota, University Library, 1, 12, 23
- Moscow, designs for a map library, 104
Institute of Library Science, 98
- Munich, Bavarian State Library, 1, 16
- Municipal libraries. *See* Urban libraries
- Music and libraries, 257
- Nancy, University Library, 14
- Nanking, Library of the Wei Sheng Shu, 35
- National and University libraries, 1, 8-23, 100-10
in Austria, 12
,, Belgium, 12-13
,, Czecho-Slovakia, 13
,, Denmark, 13
,, Esthonia, 13-14
,, Finland, 14
,, France, 14
,, Germany, 15-17
,, Great Britain and Ireland, 17-19
,, Holland, 19
,, Hungary, 19
,, Italy, 20
,, Jugoslavia, 20
,, Latvia, 20
,, New Zealand, 20
,, Norway, 20-21
,, Poland, 21
,, Spain, 21-22
,, Switzerland, 22
,, U.S.A., 22-23
- National Central Library, London, 2, 78-80
- National Committee on Regional Library Co-operation, 80
- Nationalization of libraries. *See* State control and libraries
- Naval Science, special libraries, 36-37
- Netherlands, Institute for Documentation and Registration, 25
- New Jersey, Montclair Public Library, 50
- New York, Bellevue School of Nursing Library, 37-38
Columbia School of Library Science, 4, 93-94
Frick Fine Art Reference Library, 1, 28
National Health Library, 36
Public Library, 154
- New Zealand, 20, 46, 84, 160
- New Zealand Library Association, 46
- Norway, 20-21, 28, 61, 187, 199-200
- Osterley Branch Library, 113
- Oslo, University Library, 1, 20-21
- Oviedo, University Library, 21
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, 1-2, 17-18, 104-06
Campion Hall Library, 106
St. Catherine's Hall Library, 106
St. Hilda's College Library, 107
- Palaeography and Manuscripts, 204-15
See also Archives
- Paper, 149
- Paris, Bibliothèque Nationale, 14
Bibliothèque Ste. Geneviève, 14
University Library, 14
- Peiping, National Central Library, 129
National Library of, 51-52
Union Medical College Library, 35, 87
- Pennsylvania, University Library, 1, 23
- Philadelphia, Temple University, Sullivan Memorial Library, 109
- Photography and archives, 231
and libraries, 12, 255-56
- Poland, 21, 49, 200, 250-51
- Political Science, special libraries, 38
- Prague, National and University Library, 13
- Preussische Gesamtkatalog. *See* Deutscher Gesamtkatalog
- Printing, 5, 144-52, 156-58
- Printing and Allied Trades Research Association, 156-58

- Printing Industry, Committee of, 5
 Printing Industry Research Association. *See* Printing and Allied Trades Research Association
 Prison libraries, 255
 Professional education, 1, 90-99,
 130, 133-34
 in Australia, 95-96
 ,, China, 98-99
 ,, Germany, 96, 97
 ,, Great Britain, 94-95
 ,, India, 96
 ,, Russia, 97-98
 ,, South Africa, 96
 ,, U.S.A., 1, 90-94
 Public libraries. *See* Urban libraries

 Rates (Great Britain). Abolition of differential, 53
 Reading habits, study of, 3, 41-42, 120-21
 Regional library bureaux, 2, 80-83
 Rockefeller Foundation, 3
 Rome, Accademia Museo di Storia dell' Arte Sanitaria, 36
 Biblioteca Teatrale Roberto Forges Danvanzati, 32
 Chamber of Deputies Library, 20, 38
 International Institute of Agriculture Library, 27
 University Library, 1, 20
 Physics Department, 109-10
 Roumania, 200
 Royal Australian Naval College Library, Victoria, 37
 Royal Empire Society Library, London, 1, 32-33, 108-09
 Royal Institute of British Architects Library, London, 101
 Royal Military College of Australia Library, Sydney, 37
 Rumania, 200
 Rural libraries. *See* County and rural libraries
 Russia (U.S.S.R.), 49, 97-98, 104, 148, 200-01
 Russia, White, 203

 St. Catherine's Hall Library, Oxford, 106
 St. Hilda's College Library, Oxford, 107
 Salaries in libraries, 35, 122-23
 Sanderstead, Public Library, 111
 Santiago, University Library, 21
 Saxony, Landesbibliothek, 15
 Scarborough, Public Library, 2, 113
 School libraries, 3-4, 66-71, 110-11
 Scotland, 1, 19, 54, 84, 102, 139-40, 142-43, 208-10, 237
 Scotland, National Library of, 1, 19, 102
 Scottish Central Library for Students, 84
 Scottish Library Association, 139
 Seamen, libraries for, 254
 Secondary School Libraries Committee, 67
 Shakespeare, W. Folger Shakespeare Library, Washington, 32
 Shanghai. Henry Lester Institute of Medical Research, 35
 Sheffield, Public Library, 3, 43, 101
 Sinaiticus, binding of Codex, 153
 South Africa, 34, 85, 96
 South African Library Association, 34, 96
 Southern California, University of, 109
 Sørve, Telemark Agricultural Library, 28
 Spain, 12, 21-22, 49, 62, 163-64, 188-89
 Special Areas, Commission for Wales and Monmouthshire. Grant for books, 54
 Special Library Association (U.S.A.), 24, 30, 88
 Special libraries, 24-40
 Agriculture, 27-28
 Art, 28
 Banking and finance, 28-29
 Botany, 29
 Business and commerce, 29-30, 38-39
 Dentistry, 31
 Drama, 32
 Feminism, 32
 History and Geography, 32-33
 Medicine, 33-36
 Military and Naval Science, 36-37
 Modern languages and literature, 37
 Nursing, 37-38
 Political science, 38
 Technology, 39-40
 Standard Oil Co. Library, 39-40
 State control and libraries, 4, 44, 50, 116
 Students. Bibliographical instruction for university, 11-12
 Surbiton, Public Library, 257

- Surgeon-General's Library. *See* U.S.A. Army Medical Library.
- Sweden, 25, 62, 104, 187-88, 201, 252-53
- Switzerland, 2, 22, 62-63, 189-190, 201
- Sydney, Royal Military College of Australia Library, 37
- Tallin, Esthonian Bibliographical Institute, 14
- University Library, 14
- Technical libraries. *See* Special libraries
- Technology, special libraries, 39-40
- Telemark Agricultural Library, Sørve, 28
- Temple University, Sullivan Memorial Library, 109
- Theatre, special libraries, 32
- Thuringia, Landesbibliothek, 15
- Tokyo, University Library, 30
- Tottenham, Devonshire Hill Branch Library, 111-12
- Training for librarianship. *See* Professional education
- Travelling libraries :
in Germany, 58-59
,, India, 60-61
- Turkey, 28
- Turku, Finnish University of (Åbo), 14
- Swedish University of (Åbo Akademi), 14
- Ukraine, 202
- Union catalogues. *See* Catalogues and cataloguing
- U.S.S.R. *See* Russia (U.S.S.R.)
- U.S.A., 1-5, 12, 22-24, 26-29, 32-36, 39, 49-51, 70-72, 74-75, 90-94, 101-03, 109, 113-14, 118, 121, 125, 130, 140-42, 147-49, 155, 158, 164-65, 175-78, 202-03, 234-40
- U.S.A. Army Medical Library (formerly Surgeon-General's), 2, 33, 130
- U.S.A. National Archives Library, 1, 102-03
- University Grants Committee (Great Britain), 4, 80
- University libraries. *See* National and University libraries
- Urban libraries, 3, 38-39, 41-52, 101, 103-04, 111-14
in Australia, 142
- Urban libraries (*cont.*)
in Belgium, 46
,, China, 51-52
,, Denmark, 47
,, Finland, 47
,, France, 47-48
,, Great Britain and Ireland, 41-45, 111-13, 117
,, Holland, 48-49
,, India, 45-46
,, New Zealand, 46
,, Poland, 49
,, Russia, 49
,, Spain, 49
,, U.S.A., 49-51
- Utah, University Library, 109
- Utrecht, Anglia Library, 37
- Vassar College Library, 23
- Vatican, 210-11
- Verein Deutscher Bibliothekare.
Dresden Conference, 15
- Vienna, Central Library, 104
- Virginia University Library, Charlottesville, 23
- Viipuri, Library, 2, 47, 76, 114
- Wages in libraries. *See* Salaries in libraries
- Wales, 54, 238-39
- Wales, National Library of, 238
- Wallington (Surrey), Public Library, 2, 112
- Warsaw, National Library, 21
- University Library, 21
- Warwickshire County Library, 53
- Washington, Army Medical Library (formerly Surgeon-General's), 2, 33, 130
- Folger Shakespeare Library, 32
- Library of the Department of Agriculture, 27
- National Archives Library, 1, 102-03
- Wellington (N.Z.) Public Library, 46
- Westbury-on-Trym Branch Library, Bristol, 113
- Wireless and libraries, 256
- Workers' Educational Association, 124
- York (Pennsylvania), Public Library, 114
- Yorkshire, North Riding County Library, 54
- West Riding County Library, 53
- Yugoslavia, 20, 203